

THE FIRST YEAR
OF LATIN
CUNNISON AND HARLEY



SILVER BURDETT AND COMPANY



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025





LEGIONARIUS
(Roman Legionary Soldier)

THE FIRST YEAR OF LATIN

BASED ON

CÆSAR'S WAR WITH THE HELVETII

BY

WALTER B. GUNNISON, PH.D.

PRINCIPAL OF ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN, NEW YORK.

AND

WALTER S. HARLEY, A.M.

INSTRUCTOR IN LATIN, ERASMUS HALL HIGH SCHOOL



SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

NEW YORK

BOSTON

CHICAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1902, BY
SILVER, BURDETT AND COMPANY

b

PREFACE

The plan of "The First Year of Latin" is the result of practical experience in the class room. It aims in the most direct manner to prepare the pupil at the end of the year to continue the reading of Caesar. While a general survey of the essential features of the Latin grammar is made, only those parts are emphasized which are needed. With few exceptions the words and phrases are taken directly from Caesar's War with the Helvetii, and by their frequent repetition a sufficient vocabulary is established to simplify the reading of Caesar in the second year.

Especial attention is given to reviews. At short intervals a lesson is made up of questions on the new forms and constructions of the lessons immediately preceding it, together with a repetition of the new words and such sentences of Caesar as will be used later. The earlier review lessons contain sentences for sight reading, based on the review vocabulary. In the later lessons connected passages covering chapters 1-12 of the War with the Helvetii replace these. Throughout the book the plan is to give individual forms and constructions first, and then to mass them in review when the last of a series is reached. For example, at the end of each mood, voice or tense system, the whole mood, voice or tense system is reviewed. The different uses of a case are presented separately, as needed; and in the last lessons they are brought together.

Many classes may find it possible to complete the lessons before the close of the year. For such, the remaining chapters of the War with the Helvetii (13-29) have been annotated, and sentences to be turned into Latin have been based upon them. Those who wish,

at the end of Lesson LXXIII, to pass directly to the reading of Book II will be prepared to do so.

Though the book has been divided into lessons, these must not be understood to mean daily portions. Conditions vary too much to make a division into such portions practicable.

The authors wish especially to recognize the valuable assistance given to them by the careful and full criticisms made during the revision of these pages by Professor Isaac Bronson Burgess, of the University of Chicago, and by Dr. Sidney G. Stacey, of the Erasmus Hall High School.

BROOKLYN, N. Y., *August 1, 1902.*

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	I
1. The Latin Language	I
2. The Alphabet	I
3. Pronunciation	2
4. Syllables	3
5. Quantity of Vowels	3
6. Quantity of Syllables	4
7. Accent	4
8. Parts of Speech	4
9-13. Declension	4
14-19. Conjugation	6

LESSON

I. The First Declension (Singular). The Nominative Case.	8
II. The First Declension (Plural)	10
III. The First Conjugation : Present Indicative Active. The Accusative Case	11
IV. The Second Conjugation : Present Indicative Active. The Genitive with Nouns. Prepositions	14
V. The Second Declension : Nouns in -us and -um. The Dative of Indirect Object	17
VI. The Third and Fourth Conjugations : Present Indicative Active. The Ablative of Means	20
VII. Review. Sight Reading	23
VIII. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Agreement of Adjectives	26

LESSON	PAGE
IX. The Second Declension : Nouns in -er and -ir . Adjectives in -er . The Present Indicative of sum . Predicate Noun	29
X. The Present Indicative Passive (Conj. I-IV). The Ablative of the Agent	32
XI. The Third Declension : Nouns in -ī , -o , -r . The Imperfect Indicative of sum . The Dative of the Possessor	35
XII. The Third Declension : Nouns in -men and -us . The Imperfect Indicative (Conj. I)	39
XIII. Review. Sight Reading	41
XIV. The Imperfect Indicative (Conj. II-IV). Apposition. Review of Nominative Case	43
XV. The Third Declension (continued). The Ablative of Specification	47
XVI. The Future Indicative (Conj. I, II). Future of sum	49
XVII. The Third Declension (continued). The Ablative of Time	51
XVIII. Gender in the Third Declension. The Future Indicative (Conj. III, IV)	54
XIX. Review. Sight Reading	56
XX. The Perfect Indicative Active (Conj. I-IV). Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions	58
XXI. The Relative Pronoun quī . Agreement of the Relative. Sentences and Clauses	62
XXII. The Demonstrative Pronouns is and īdem	65
XXIII. The Present Subjunctive (Conj. I and sum). The Subjunctive of Purpose	67
XXIV. The Present Subjunctive (Conj. II-IV). Some Noun-clauses with ut and nē	70
XXV. Adjectives of the Third Declension. The Genitive with Adjectives	73
XXVI. Review. Caesar, Bk. I, Chap. I (begun)	75

LESSON	PAGE
XXVII. The Imperfect Subjunctive (Conj. I-IV). The Imperfect Subjunctive in Clauses of Purpose, etc.	79
XXVIII. The Present Infinitive. The Uses of the Infinitive. The Subject of the Infinitive	82
XXIX. The Present Participle. The Gerund. The Gerundive. The Present System	86
XXX. Third Conjugation. Verbs in -iō. The Ablative of Manner	90
XXXI. The Pronouns <i>hic, iste, ille, ipse</i> . Caesar, I. 1 (continued)	93
XXXII. The Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active (Conj. I-IV)	96
XXXIII. Review. Caesar, I. 1 (concluded)	99
XXXIV. The Perfect Participle. The Ablative Absolute .	102
XXXV. The Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Passive (Conj. I-IV). Review of the Indicative Forms	106
XXXVI. Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of Comparatives	109
XXXVII. Comparison of Adjectives (continued). The Ablative after a Comparative	112
XXXVIII. Comparison of Adjectives (concluded). The Ablative of Degree of Difference. The Dative with Adjectives	115
XXXIX. Review. Caesar, I. 2 (begun)	118
XL. Adverbs: Their Formation and Comparison .	120
XLI. The Fourth Declension. Caesar, I. 2 (continued)	122
XLII. The Fifth Declension. Idioms. Stems of Nouns and Adjectives	125
XLIII. The Future Active Participle. The Future Active Infinitive. The Reflexive Pronoun <i>suī</i> .	129
XLIV. Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs. The Ablative with <i>ūtor</i> , etc.	133

LESSON	PAGE
XLV. Review	136
XLVI. The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive (Conj. I-IV). Review of the Forms of the Subjunctive. Cum denoting Time	137
XLVII. Compounds of sum . The Dative with Compounds	141
XLVIII. The Numeral mille . The Genitive of the Whole. The Accusative of Space and Time	144
XLIX. The Verb fiō . The Ablative of Cause. Caesar, I. 2 (concluded)	147
L. The Subjunctive of Result. The Historical Present. The Sequence of Tenses	149
LI. Review. Caesar, I. 3 (begun)	153
LII. The Supine and its Uses. Expressions of Purpose. Caesar, I. 3 (continued)	155
LIII. The Perfect Infinitive. Review of the Infinitive. The Perfect and Supine Systems. Caesar, I. 3 (concluded)	157
LIV. Impersonal Verbs. Noun-Clauses. Caesar, I. 4 (begun)	162
LV. The Verb eō . The Ablative of Accompaniment. Caesar, I. 4 (concluded)	164
LVI. The Verb ferō . Expressions of Place. The Ablative of Separation. Caesar, I. 5 (begun)	167
LVII. Review. Caesar, I. 5 (concluded)	171
LVIII. Numeral Adjectives. Clauses of Characteristic. Caesar, I. 6 (begun)	172
LIX. The Genitive and Ablative of Description. Causal Clauses. Caesar, I. 6 (concluded)	176
LX. The Dative with Certain Verbs. Temporal Clauses. Caesar, I. 7 (begun)	179
LXI. The Periphrastic Conjugations. The Dative of the Agent. Caesar, I. 7 (continued)	182

LESSON	PAGE
LXII. The Verbs volō and nōlō . Conditional sentences. Caesar, I. 7 (concluded)	185
LXIII. Review. Caesar, I. 8 (begun)	188
LXIV. The Interrogative Pronoun quis . Questions and Answers. Caesar, I. 8 (concluded)	189
LXV. Personal Pronouns. Indefinite Pronouns. Re- view of Pronouns	192
LXVI. The Objective Genitive. Review of the Genitive. Caesar, I. 9 (begun)	195
LXVII. The Datives of Purpose and of Reference. Re- view of the Dative. Caesar, I. 9 (concluded)	198
LXVIII. Two Accusatives. Review of the Accusative and Ablative. Caesar, I. 10 (begun)	201
LXIX. The Imperative Mood. Negative Command. Caesar, I. 10 (concluded)	205
LXX. Indirect Discourse. Caesar, I. 11 (begun)	208
LXXI. Review of the Indicative. Caesar, I. 11 (con- cluded)	211
LXXII. The Subjunctive in Principal Clauses. Caesar, I. 12 (begun)	214
LXXIII. Concessive Clauses. Review of the Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses. Caesar, I. 12 (con- cluded)	217
THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII, CAESAR, I, Chaps. 1-12 (Text Repeated)	221
THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII, CAESAR, I, Chaps. 13-29, with Notes and Exercises	227
APPENDIX (containing Paradigms and Rules of Syntax)	247
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	289
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	311

THE FIRST YEAR OF LATIN

INTRODUCTION

The Introduction is chiefly for reference. In preparation for Lesson I, section 3 should be learned, and sections 8, 9, 10, 11 and 13 should be read. Other sections will be referred to as they become of use.

1. THE LATIN LANGUAGE.—Latin was the language of the ancient Romans, whose literature in part has come down to us. After the downfall of the Roman government in 476 A.D., Latin for centuries was the language of church and state in Europe. Though no longer spoken as a national language, it is the parent of the modern languages of Italy, France, Spain and Portugal. It is the source of the majority of our English words, and of the terms of law, medicine and natural science in all European languages.

2. THE ALPHABET.—(a) The Latin Alphabet has the same letters as the English, omitting *j* and *w*.

(b) The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u* and *y*. *i* is a consonant (English *j*) between two vowels, and at the beginning of a word whose second letter is a vowel: *ēius, iam*.

(c) The consonants are—

Mutes: *b, p, t, d, c, k, q, g*.

Liquids: *l, m, n, r*.

Spirants: **h, f, s.** **s** is also a sibilant.

Double consonants: **x**(*cs* or *gs*) and **z**(*ds*).

i and **v** are semi-vowels.

3. PRONUNCIATION.—Latin is now pronounced chiefly according to the so-called Roman method, which is given here:

(a) *Vowels.* A vowel is either long or short. In this book long vowels are marked thus (ˉ).

LONG.	• SHORT. ¹
ā is like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> : lātus .	a is like <i>a</i> in <i>artistic</i> : castra .
ē “ <i>e</i> “ <i>they</i> : dē .	e “ <i>e</i> “ <i>net</i> : eam .
ī “ <i>i</i> “ <i>machine</i> : liber .	i “ <i>i</i> “ <i>pin</i> : itinera .
ō “ <i>o</i> “ <i>rode</i> : tōtus .	o “ <i>o</i> “ <i>obey</i> : homō .
ū “ <i>u</i> “ <i>rule</i> : ūna .	u “ <i>u</i> “ <i>pull</i> : ² duo .

The sound of *y* is like the German *ü*, which has no exact English equivalent.

(b) *Diphthongs.*³

ae is like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> : prae .	ui , sounded like <i>we</i> , occurs
au “ <i>ou</i> “ <i>our</i> : audiō .	chiefly in cui (<i>kwee</i>) and
oe “ <i>oi</i> “ <i>oil</i> : proelium .	huic (<i>hweek</i>).

(c) *Consonants.*

c is like <i>c</i> in <i>can</i> : cēdō .
g “ <i>g</i> “ <i>get</i> : rēgem .
i “ <i>y</i> “ <i>yet</i> : hūius .
s “ <i>s</i> “ <i>son</i> or <i>this</i> : hostis .
t “ <i>t</i> “ <i>ten</i> : tertia .

¹ The short vowels have the same quality of sound as the long, but take half the time. **ā** = *ăă*.

² **u** in **qu-**, and sometimes in **gu-** and **su-** before a vowel, has the sound of *w*.

³ **ei**, like *ei* in *eight*, and **eu** like *eh'-oo*, occur in a few words.

v is like *w* in *wet*: **nāvis**.

x “ *x* “ *ax*: **lēx**.

bs and **bt** are like *ps* and *pt*: **urbs**, **obtinēt**.

ch is like *k*.

Other consonants are sounded as in English.

NOTE.—Latin words are sometimes pronounced as if they were English. This is called the English method. According to a method known as the Continental, the vowels have the same sounds as given in the Roman method, while the consonants are sounded as in the language of the learner.

4. SYLLABLES.—(a) A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **vic-tō-ri-a**, *victory*; **proe-li-um**, *battle*; **a-qui-la**, *eagle*; **hū-ius**, *of this*.

(b) In dividing a word into syllables a single consonant between two vowels is to be written with the second: **lo-cus**, *place*. Compound words are to be separated into their component parts: **ab-est**, *he is away*.

(c) The next to the last syllable is called the *penult*; the one before the penult is the *antepenult*.

5. QUANTITY OF VOWELS.—The *quantity* of a vowel refers to its length; that is, to the time occupied in pronouncing it. Quantity must be learned chiefly by observation, but in many cases the following rules will determine it:

(a) A vowel is short before **nd**, **nt**, **h** or another vowel¹: **fūnditor**, *slinger*; **portānt**, *they carry*; **nīhil**, *nothing*; **dīēs**, *day*.

(b) A vowel is generally long before **gm**, **gn**, **nf**, **ns**, and **i** (consonant): **māgnus**, *great*; **īnfra**, *below*; **oriēns**, *rising*; **hūius**, *of this*.

¹ With exceptions.

(c) A vowel produced by contraction is long: **nīl** from **nihil**, *nothing*.

(d) Diphthongs are long: **nauta**, *sailor*.

6. QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.—(a) A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel not followed by two or more consonants: **nu-me-rus**, *number*; **vi-a**, *way*.

(b) A syllable is long by nature if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **a-mī-cus**, *friend*; **tu-bae**, *trumpets*.

(c) A syllable is long by position if it contains a short vowel followed in the same word by **x** or **z**, or by any two consonants except a mute with **l** or **r**: **nox**, *night*; **noc-tēs**, *nights*. A syllable, therefore, may be long in quantity, even though its vowel is short.

→ 7. ACCENT.—(a) A word of two syllables is accented on the first: **car'-rus**, *cart*; **pu'-er**, *boy*.

(b) A word of more than two syllables is accented on the penult, if that is long; otherwise, on the antepenult: **a-mī'-cus**, *friend*; **im-pe'-ri-um**, *command*.

(c) **-que** and a few other words, which are never used by themselves and are called *enclitics*, require the accent to fall on the last syllable of the word to which they are attached: **tēla'que**.

8. PARTS OF SPEECH.—In Latin, as in English, there are eight parts of speech: *nouns*, *adjectives*, *pronouns*, *verbs*, *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions* and *interjections*. The last four are sometimes called *particles*, “little parts” of speech. Participles are adjective forms of the verb. There is no article in Latin.

9. DECLENSION.—Nouns, pronouns and adjectives

are inflected or declined; that is, they take different endings to show the *case*, *number*, and in many instances the *gender* of the word. In English the relation of a noun to other words of a sentence is not determined by a special ending, except in the possessive case; the objective is the same in form as the nominative. In Latin the objective of many words differs from the nominative; thus, the objective form for boy is **puerum**, while the nominative is **puer**. Special endings are used to show relations which in English require prepositions: thus, *of the boy* is **puerī**; *to the boy*, **puerō**.

10. CASES.—Declined words have six cases: the *nominative*, *vocative*, *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative* and *ablative*.

LATIN.	GENERAL ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
Nominative:	Nominative (Case of the subject).
Vocative:	“ used in address (Case of address).
Genitive:	Objective with <i>of</i> , or the possessive.
Dative:	“ with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> (Case of the indirect object).
Accusative:	“ after a verb or preposition (Case of the direct object).
Ablative:	“ with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>with</i> , <i>in</i> , etc.

The vocative is spelled like the nominative in all Latin words, except in the singular of some nouns and adjectives in **-us**, as explained in section 57.

Some names of towns and a few other words have in the singular another case, called the *locative*, denoting the place *where*. It is equivalent to the English objective with *in* or *at*.

11. NUMBER AND GENDER.—The numbers are the *singular* and the *plural*; the genders are the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*. In Latin many words are masculine or feminine which in English are neuter. **pēs**, *foot*, masculine; **manus**, *hand*, feminine.

12. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.—(a) Nouns denoting males, and most names of rivers, winds and months are masculine: **filius**, *son*; **Iūlius**, *Julius*; **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*; **auster**, *south wind*; **Mārtius**, *March*.

(b) Nouns denoting females and most names of countries, towns, islands and trees are feminine: **filia**, *daughter*; **Iūlia**, *Julia*; **Gallia**, *Gaul*; **Rōma**, *Rome*; **Mona**, *Isle of Man*; **pirus**, *pear tree*.

13. FIVE DECLENSIONS.—There are five declensions, distinguished by the ending of the genitive singular which in the first declension is **-ae**; second, **-ī**; third, **-is**; fourth, **-ūs**; fifth, **-ēī**.

14. CONJUGATION.—Verbs are inflected or conjugated to show the voice, mood, tense, number and person.

15. VOICE. MOOD. TENSE.—In Latin there are two voices: the *active* and the *passive*; three moods: the *indicative*, the *subjunctive* and the *imperative*; six tenses: the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *future*, the *perfect*, the *pluperfect* and the *future perfect*. The numbers and persons are the same as in English.

16. VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.—The conjugation of the verb includes also certain verbal nouns: the *infinitives*, the *gerund* and the *supine*; and verbal adjectives: the *participles* (including the *gerundive*).

17. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—Certain forms of a verb are

called its *principal parts*, because from them all the other forms can be derived. For a verb in the active voice, they are the first person of the present indicative, the present infinitive, the first person of the perfect indicative and the supine. Thus for *laudō*, *I praise*, the principal parts are *laudō*, *laudāre*, *laudāvī*, *laudātum*.

18. STEMS OF THE VERB.—A stem of a verb is a fixed part to which are added certain letters indicating number and person, and sometimes others denoting mood and tense. Verbs have three stems: the *present*, the *perfect* and the *supine*. The present stem is found by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive active: *laudāre*, *laudā-*; the perfect stem, by dropping *-ī* of the perfect indicative active: *laudāvī*, *laudāv-*; the supine stem, by dropping *-um* of the supine: *laudātum*, *laudāt-*.

19. FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—There are four conjugations, distinguished by the final letter (*characteristic*) of the present stem. The first is sometimes called the *ā*-conjugation, the second the *ē*-conjugation, the third the *ě*-conjugation, the fourth the *ī*-conjugation, because the present stems end in *ā*, *ē*, *ě* and *ī*, respectively.

LESSON I

The First Declension (Singular).—The Nominative Case.

Learn the sounds of the vowels and consonants in section 3. Read sections 8, 9, 10, 11 and 13.

20. THE GENITIVE SINGULAR.—The first declension includes all words whose genitive singular ends in -ae. The nominative, except in some words of Greek origin, ends in -a.

21. GENDER.—Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except a few that denote male beings, and the names of some rivers, which are masculine (12, a).

22. BASE.—The base of a declined word is that part of it which is the same in all its cases. It may be found in all declensions by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. A word is declined by adding the endings to the base.

23.

MODEL NOUN

Porta, f., gate. Base: port-.		
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Endings.</i>
Nominative ¹	porta, a gate ²	-a
Genitive	portae, of a gate	-ae
Dative	portae, to or for a gate	-ae
Accusative	portam, a gate	-am
Ablative	portā, from, by, with, in, a gate	-ā

¹ The vocative, being like the nominative, is omitted in this and the following models. See 10.

² The word may be translated *gate, a gate, or the gate.*

24.

VOCABULARY

porta , -ae, ¹ F., <i>gate</i> .	alta , <i>high, deep</i> .
prōvincia , -ae, F., <i>province</i> .	dīvīsa , <i>divided</i> .
rīpa , -ae, F., <i>bank</i> (of a river).	lāta , <i>broad</i> .
terra , -ae, F., <i>land, country</i> .	longa , <i>long</i> .
via , -ae, F., <i>road, way</i> .	māgna , <i>large, great</i> .
Gallia , -ae, F., <i>Gaul</i> (now called France).	parva , <i>small</i> .
Helvētia , -ae, F., <i>Helvetia</i> (now called Switzerland).	et , conj., <i>and</i> .
Sēquana , -ae, F. or M., <i>the Seine</i> .	est , (<i>he, she, it</i>) <i>is</i> .

Decline the nouns and adjectives like **porta**. Decline together **via longa**.

NOTE.—Give careful attention to the length of vowels (3) and to accent (7). Do not accent the last syllable of a word. Mark the long vowels (ˉ) in all written work.

25.

MODEL SENTENCE

Porta est alta: *The gate is high.*

Notice that **porta** is in the nominative case and is the subject.

26. RULE I.—*The subject of a finite² verb is in the nominative case.*

27.

TRANSLATE INTO ENGLISH

1. **Viae**. 2. **Prōvinciae**. 3. **Terram**. 4. **Prōvinciam**. 5. **Lāta terra**. 6. **Rīpā lātā**. 7. **Viā**. 8. **Viā Helvētia**. 9. **Parvae prōvinciae**. 10. **Sēquana est longa**. 11. **Prōvincia est māgna**. 12. **Rīpa est lāta**. 13. **Via est longa**

¹ The genitive singular is given in the vocabularies to show to which declension a word belongs (13).

² A *finite* verb is a verb in the indicative, subjunctive or imperative mood.

et lāta. 14. Gallia est māgna terra.¹ 15. Helvētia est parva. 16. Gallia est divīsa.

28.

TRANSLATE INTO LATIN

1. For the broad land. 2. Of the deep Seine. 3. A road of Helvetia. 4. By the bank of the Seine. 5. The bank is high. 6. The province is a small country.¹ 7. The country is Helvetia. 8. Helvetia is divided.

LESSON II

The First Declension (Plural).

Read and apply sections 4, 5, 6, and 7, *a, b*.

29.

MODEL NOUN

	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Endings.</i>
N.	portae, <i>gates</i>	-ae
G.	portārum, <i>of gates</i>	-ārum
D.	portīs, <i>to or for gates</i>	-īs
Ac.	portās, <i>gates</i>	-ās
Ab.	portīs, <i>from, by, with, in, gates</i>	-īs

30.

VOCABULARY

amīcitia, -ae, *F., friendship.*

nauta, -ae, *M., sailor.*

littera, -ae, *F., letter (of alphabet); pl. letter (epistle).*

victōria, -ae, *F., victory.*

nōn, *adv., not.*

sunt, *(they) are.*

Decline the nouns of 24 and 30 in both numbers.

¹ A predicate nominative (94).

31.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Porta est alta:** *The gate is high.*
2. **Portae sunt altae:** *The gates are high.*

Notice that the verb is changed to agree in number with the subject; and that each adjective has the same number and case as its noun.

32. RULE II.—*A finite verb agrees with its subject in number and person.*

TRANSLATE

33. 1. Nautārum. 2. Victōriārum. 3. Litterārum. 4. Amīcitiā nautae. 5. Victōria nautārum. 6. Rīpās. 7. Litterās. 8. Litterīs. 9. Longīs rīpīs. 10. Parvae portae. 11. Rīpae sunt lātae. 12. Viae sunt longae et lātae. 13. Gallia et Helvētia sunt terrae. 14. Prōvinciae nōn sunt māgnae. 15. Litterae nōn sunt parvae.

34. 1. By the victories. 2. Of the small countries. 3. By the letter of the sailor. 4. For the friendship of the provinces. 5. The victory of Helvetia is great. 6. The countries are small. 7. The banks are not high.

LESSON III

**The First Conjugation: Present Indicative Active.
The Accusative Case.**

Read sections 14 to 19.

35. PERSONAL ENDINGS OF PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—In the indicative mood there are six tenses (15). The present indicative active is conjugated by

adding to the present stem (18) certain endings to denote person and number. These *personal* endings are:

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
First Person,	-ō, <i>I</i>	-mus, <i>we</i>
Second Person,	-s, <i>you (thou)</i>	-tis, <i>you</i>
Third Person,	-t, <i>he (she, it)</i>	-nt, <i>they</i>

36. The first conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active ends in **-āre**.

37. MODEL VERB

Laudō, I praise. Present stem: laudā-.			
	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND. SUPINE.
PRIN. PARTS :	laudō,	laudāre,	laudāvī, laudātum.
PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.			
	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
1. laudō,	<i>I praise.</i> ¹		laudāmus, <i>we praise.</i>
2. laudās,	<i>you praise.</i> ²		laudātis, <i>you praise.</i>
3. laudat,	<i>he (she, it) praises.</i>		laudant, <i>they praise.</i>

NOTE.—Final **-ā-** of the stem disappears before the ending **-ō** in the first person, and becomes short before **-t** and **-nt** in the third person (5, a).

38. VOCABULARY

cōpia, **-ae**, *F.*, *supply*; *pl.* **Belgae, -ārum**, *M.*, *Belgae, troops, forces.* *Belgians* (inhabitants of northern Gaul).
Messāla, -ae, *M.*, *Messala* (name of a Roman officer, **Celtae, -ārum**, *M.*, *Celts* (inhabitants of central Gaul).
 61 B.C.).

¹ Or, *I am praising* (progressive form); *I do praise* (emphatic form).

² Or, *thou praisest.*

cōfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *establish, strengthen, affirm.*

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *praise.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *announce, report.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *subdue, conquer.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bring.*

Inflect (decline or conjugate) the words in 38.

39.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Messālam laudant:** *They praise Messala.*

2. **Celtae Messālam laudant:** *The Celts praise Messala.*

3. **Messāla nautās laudat:** *Messala praises the sailors.*

Notice that **Messālam** and **nautās** are in the accusative case and are objects of the verb; that the subject is expressed by the personal ending if no other subject is found (sentence 1); that the verb stands last, a common position in Latin prose.

40. RULE III.—*The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

TRANSLATE

41. 1. Portant, nūntiant, cōfirmant. 2. Pācāmus, portāmus. 3. Cōfirmās, nūntiās. 4. Portātis, pācātis. 5. Belgae victōriam nūntiant. 6. Cōpiās laudāmus. 7. Celtae amicitiam cōfirmant. 8. Messāla māgnam prōvinciam pācat. 9. Nauta litterās portat. 10. Celtās et Belgās laudātis. 11. Cōpiam frūmentī¹ portās. 12. Cōpiae nōn sunt nautae.

42. 1. He carries, subdues, establishes. 2. You (pl.) announce, establish. 3. They praise, establish. 4. We subdue the small provinces. 5. I am carrying a long letter. 6. You (pl.) praise Messala and the sailors. 7. The

¹ of grain

sailor announces a great victory. 8. You (sing.) are establishing friendship. 9. He is subduing Helvetia.

LESSON IV

The Second Conjugation : Present Indicative Active.
The Genitive With Nouns.—Prepositions.

43. The second conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active ends in **-ēre**. Review 35.

44.

MODEL VERB

Moneō, I advise, I warn. Present stem: monē- .	
PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.	
PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
moneō, I advise. ¹	monēmus, we advise.
monēs, you advise.	monētis, you advise.
monet, he, etc., advises.	monent, they advise.

In which forms is **-e-** short?

45.

VOCABULARY

causa, -ae, F., *cause*.

fuga, -ae, F., *flight*.

silva, -ae, F., *forest*.

nostra, possessive pron.,²

our.

Aquītānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania* (a part of Gaul).

Garumna, -ae, M. or F., the *Garonne* (a river of Gaul).

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussum, *order, command*.

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *advise, warn*.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move*.

¹ See page 12, footnote 1.

² Used as an adjective.

persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade.

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, ¹ extend.

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see.

Inflect all words in 45.

46.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Nautae terram Belgārum vident:** *The sailors see the country of the Belgians, or the Belgians' country.*
2. **Aquitānia ā Garumnā ad Hispāniam pertinet:** *Aquitania extends from the Garonne to Spain.*

Notice that **Belgārum** is in the genitive case, limiting **terram** like an English possessive; that **Garumnā** is in the ablative, governed by the preposition **ā** (*from*); and that **Hispāniam** is in the accusative case, governed by the preposition **ad** (*to*).

47. RULE IV.—A noun (or pronoun) limiting another noun and not meaning the same person or thing is in the genitive case.

48. RULE V.—The accusative and ablative cases, like the objective case in English, may be used with prepositions.

49. The most common prepositions are:

WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

ad, to, near

ante, before

circum, around

in, into

inter, between, among

per, through, over

WITH THE ABLATIVE.

ā, ab,² away from, from, by

cum, with, in company with

dē, down from, from, concerning

ē, ex,² out of, from

in, in, on

¹ The supine, the fourth word of the principal parts, is sometimes wanting.

² **ā** and **ē** are used only before consonants; **ab** and **ex**, before vowels or consonants.

post, *after, behind*

prope, *near*

propter, *on account of*

trāns, *across*

prō, *before, in front of, in behalf of*

sine, *without*

NOTE.—As a rule, *place to which* is denoted by **ad** or **in** (*into*) with the accusative; *place from which* by **ab**, **dē** or **ex** with the ablative; *place in which* by **in** (*in*) with the ablative: **ad** **Hispāniam**, **ā** **Garumnā**, **in** **silvā**. This rule is illustrated in section 445.

50. ORDER OF WORDS.—The relation of words in a Latin sentence is indicated by the endings, not by the order as in English. Therefore the order of words in the two languages is generally different. A common order in Latin is: 1. The subject, preceded or followed by its modifiers. 2. Modifiers of the predicate. 3. The predicate. The tendency is to put the most emphatic word first.

TRANSLATE

51. 1. Iubēmus, persuādēmus. 2. Movētis. 3. Persuādēs, movēs. 4. Iubent, persuādent. 5. Celtæc māgnam terram habent. 6. Terra Celtārum est māgna. 7. Terra Celtārum ā Belgīs ad Aquītāniam pertinet. 8. Messāla litterās nautæ habet. 9. Longās et lātās viās Belgārum vidēmus. 10. Via est per prōvinciam ad Aquītāniam. 11. Nautās Messālae monet. 12. Vidēs lātās silvās Helvētiæ. 13. Causa fugæ Celtārum est victōria Messālae.

52. 1. We see, move. 2. You (pl.) order, persuade. 3. He is ordering, is reporting. 4. They extend, move. 5. The Seine has broad banks. 6. The sailors see the flight of the troops. 7. (There) are long roads through our province. 8. A large forest extends from Spain to the province. 9. We have large forces. 10. They announce the causes of victory.

LESSON V

The Second Declension: Nouns in *-us* and *-um*.
The Dative of Indirect Object.

53. GENITIVE SINGULAR.—The second declension includes all words whose genitive singular ends in *-ī*. The nominative ends in *-us*, *-er*, *-ir* or *-um*.

54. GENDER.—Nouns of the second declension are masculine, except those in *-um*, which are neuter.¹

55.

MODEL NOUNS

Amicus, m., friend. Base: amīc-.				
	Singular.	Plural.	ENDINGS.	
			Sing.	Plur.
N.	amīcus, a friend	amīcī, friends	-us	-ī
G.	amīcī, of a friend	amīcōrum, of friends	-ī	-ōrum
D.	amīcō, to or for a friend	amīcīs, to or for friends	-ō	-īs
Ac.	amīcum, a friend	amīcōs, friends	-um	-ōs
Ab.	amīcō, from, etc., a friend	amīcīs, from, etc., friends	-ō	-īs
Bellum, n., war. Base: bell-.				
N.	bellum, war	bella, wars	-um	-a
G.	bellī, of war	bellōrum, of wars	-ī	-ōrum
D.	bellō, to or for war	bellīs, to or for wars	-ō	-īs
Ac.	bellum, war	bella, wars	-um	-a
Ab.	bellō, from, etc., war	bellīs, from, etc., wars	-ō	-īs

What cases of this declension have the same endings?

¹ A few nouns in *-us* are feminine; three are neuter.

* mnemotechnic usually I observe Latin verbs (2nd)

56. Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** have in the genitive **-iī** or **-ī**, with the accent of the nominative : **filius**, *a son*, **filiī** or **filiī**, *of a son*; **impe'rium**, *command*, **impe'riī** or **impe'ri**, *of command*.

57. VOCATIVE.—Nouns of the second declension in **-us** have the vocative singular in **-e**: **amice**, *friend*, *O friend*. But **filius**, *son*, and proper names in **-ius** have the vocative singular spelled like the base, with the accent of the nominative: **fī'lī**, *O son*, **Mercu'ri** (from **Mercurius**), *O Mercury*.

58.

VOCABULARY

filia, -ae, *F.*, *daughter*.¹

filius, -ī, *M.*, *son*.

amicus, -ī, *M.*, *friend*.

equus, equī, *M.*, *horse*.

lēgātus, -ī, *M.*, *lieutenant*
ambassador.

nūntius, -ī, *M.*, *messenger*,
message.

pāgus, -ī, *M.*, *district, canton*.

Gallī, -ōrum, *M.*, *Gauls* (inhabitants of Gallia).

Aquitānī, -ōrum, *M.*, the *Aquitani* (inhabitants of Aquitania).

bellum, -ī, *N.*, *war*.

oppidum, -ī, *N.*, *town*.

pīlum, -ī, *N.*, *javelin*.

dō, *dare*,² **dedī**, *datum*,² *give*.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*.

Inflect the words in the vocabulary.

TRANSLATE

59. 1. **Lēgātī**. 2. **Equōrum**, equīs. 3. **Lēgātīs**, nūntiīs, filiābus. 4. **Nūntiō**, filiō. 5. **Per**³ nūntium. 6. **In-**

¹ **Filia** has the form **fili-ābus** in the dative and ablative plural, to avoid confusion with the same cases of **filius**.

² Contrary to rule, **-a-** is short in **dare** and **datum**. The present tense is **dō**, **dās**, **dat**, **damus**, **datis**, **dant**.

³ See 49.

ter¹ equōs. 7. Cum¹ Gallīs, cum filiō. 8. Equī amīcōrum.
9. Pāgī, pāgōs. 10. Ad oppidum. 11. In¹ oppida.
12. In¹ oppidīs. 13. Pīlō, pīlōrum. 14. Ante¹ bellum.

60. 1. Of the son, of the daughter. 2. With² the sons, with² the daughters. 3. For the Gauls. 4. Among² the lieutenants. 5. For the friend of the lieutenant and of Messala. 6. In the wars of the Germans. 7. The javelins of the sailor.

61. DEFINITION.—An indirect object is the object to or for which anything is given, said or done.

62. MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Lēgātus filiae litterās dat:** *The lieutenant gives his daughter (or to his daughter) a letter.*
2. **Belgae Gallīs victōriam nūntiant:** *The Belgians report the victory to the Gauls.*

In these sentences, notice that the indirect objects **filiae** and **Gallīs** are in the dative case.

63. RULE VI.—*The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

TRANSLATE

64. Amīcus lēgātō equum dat.
2. Filiīs et filiābus, lēgātōrum equōs dant. 3. Amīcī filī et filiae³ sunt in Germāniā.⁴ 4. Messāla nūntium videt. 5. Helvētia in quattuor⁴ pāgōs est



Lēgātus

¹ See 49.

² Use a Latin preposition. See 49.

³ Genitive.

⁴ Words not found in the lesson vocabularies will be found in the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

dīvisā. 6. Persuādet amīcō.¹ 7. Persuādent amīcīs.
8. In oppidīs Celtārum sunt equī et pīla. 9. Causam bellī
nūntiāmus.

65. 1. I see the horses of the Gauls in the forest.
2. You have a letter for the son of the sailor. 3. The lieutenant subdues the Aquitani. 4. The sons of the lieutenant report the victory to Messala. 5. They are fighting with the forces of the Aquitani. 6. We persuade the Gauls.

LESSON VI

The Third and Fourth Conjugations: Present Indicative Active.—The Ablative of Means.

66. The third conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active ends in **-ĕre**.

67.

MODEL VERB

Regō, I rule. Present stem: **regĕ-**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

Singular.

regō, I rule.

regis, you rule.

regit, he, etc., rules.

Plural.

regimus, we rule.

regitis, you rule.

regunt, they rule.

NOTE.—The final **-e** of the stem disappears before **-ō** in

¹ The verb *persuade* in Latin governs the dative of indirect object. We should expect the accusative of the direct object, but to the Roman mind **persuādeō** meant, *I give a persuasive reason to some one*,

the first person singular, becomes **-u-** before **-nt**, and **-i-** before the other endings.

68. The fourth conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive active ends in **-īre**.

69.

MODEL VERB

Audiō, <i>I hear</i> . Present stem: audi-.	
PRINCIPAL PARTS: audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum.	
PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
audiō, <i>I hear</i> .	audīmus, <i>we hear</i> .
audīs, <i>you hear</i> .	audītis, <i>you hear</i> .
audit, <i>he, etc., hears</i> .	audiunt, <i>they hear</i> .

NOTE.—In the third person plural the letter **-u-** stands between the stem and the ending. How does the quantity of **-i-** before the endings differ in the third and fourth conjugations?

70.

VOCABULARY

fossa, -ae, *F.*, ditch.

tuba, -ae, *F.*, trumpet.

gladius, -ī, *M.*, sword.

mūrus, -ī, *M.*, wall.

Rhēnus, -ī, *M.*, the Rhine.

castra, -ōrum, *N.*, camp (sing. fortress).

proelium, -ī, *N.*, battle.

signum, -ī, *N.*, signal, standard.

continenter, adv., continually.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *strive, fight, hasten*.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsum, *divide, separate*.

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *carry on, wage (war), do*.

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsu, *set fire to, burn*.

incolō, -colere, -coluī, —, *inhabit, dwell*.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule*.

audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum, *hear*.

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, fortify.
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, come.

TRANSLATE

71. 1. Proelia, proeliīs. 2. Tubae, tubā. 3. Mūrōrum.
 4. Fossārum. 5. Gladium, gladiō, gladiīs. 6. Signī, signa.
 7. Ad castra. 8. In castra. 9. In castrīs. 10. Incendit,
 mūnit, venit. 11. Incenditis, geritis, mūnītis. 12. Veniunt,
 dīvidunt. 13. Contendimus, incolimus, venīmus.

72. 1. Of the camp. 2. Of the battle. 3. For the
 camp of the troops. 4. You inhabit. 5. We fortify.
 6. They inhabit the towns. 7. He hears a signal. 8. You
 are coming to the town. 9. The Garonne separates the
 towns.

73.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Signum tubā dat:** *He gives the signal with a trumpet.*
2. **Lēgātus castra mūrō et fossā mūnit:** *The lieutenant fortifies the camp with a wall and a ditch.*

With what is the signal given? With what is the
 camp fortified? **Tubā, mūrō and fossā**, in these sen-
 tences, are ablatives of *means or instrument*.

74. RULE VII.—*The means or instrument of an action is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

TRANSLATE

75. 1. Helvētīi¹ oppida incendunt. 2. Signa proelī audiō.
 3. Rōmānī¹ gladiīs et pīlīs pūgnant. 4. Mūrus castrōrum
 ad rīpam nōn pertinet. 5. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum sunt in
 castrīs. 6. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum in castra veniunt. 7. Hel-

¹ See general vocabulary.

vētīī proeliīs cum Germānīs¹ contendunt. 8. Belgae cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt. 9. Lēgātus cum pāgīs Helvētiaē bellum gerit. 10. Germānī trāns Rhēnum¹ incolunt. 11. Aquītānī et Belgae et Celtae Galliam incolunt. 12. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna dīvidit. 13. Gallōs ā Belgīs Mātrona¹ et Sēquana dīvidit.²

* 76. 1. You hear the letter. 2. The trumpets, swords and standards are in the camp. 3. The sailor fights with a sword and a javelin. 4. The Germans are fortifying the town with a wall. 5. We (do) not inhabit a province of the Romans.



Tuba

LESSON VII—REVIEW

77. 1. What is meant by base (22)? 2. How is a noun declined (22)? 3. How is the present tense conjugated (35)? 4. Inflect the model words in Lessons I–VI. 5. What use has been given for each of the cases? 6. What is an indirect object (61)?

¹ See general vocabulary.

² The verb is singular, for the two rivers form one boundary.

78.

Review Vocabulary ¹

amīcitia	filius	inter	portō
causa	gladius	per	pūgnō
cōpia	lēgātus	post	habeō
filia	mūrus	prope	iubeō
fossa	nūntius	propter	moneō
fuga	pāgus	trāns	moveō
littera	bellum	ā, ab	persuādeō
nauta	castra	cum	pertineō
porta	oppidum	dē	videō
prōvincia	pīlum	ē, ex	contendō
rīpa	proelium	prō	dīvidō
silva	sīgnum	sine	gerō
terra	continenter	et	incendō
tuba	nōn	cōnfirmō	incolō
via	ad	dō	regō
victōria	ante	laudō	audiō
amīcus	circum	nūntiō	mūniō
equus	in	pācō	veniō

Mention some English words derived from the above. Thus, from **porta** we have *portal*; from **portō**, *portable*, *export*, *import*, etc. Consult an English dictionary that gives the Latin words from which English words come.

Review Sentences

79. 1. Gallia est dīvisa. 2. Celtæ amīcitiam cōnfirmant. 3. Terra Celtārum ā Belgīs ad Aquītāniam per-

¹ In arranging the vocabularies, nouns are placed first, in the order of their declensions; verbs last, in the order of their conjugations; the other words following in the usual order of the parts of speech. Exceptions are made in some cases to emphasize related words.

tinet. 4. Aquītānī et Belgae et Celtae Galliam incolunt. 5. Belgae cum Germānīs contendunt. 6. Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. 7. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. 8. Helvētia in quatuor pāgōs est dīvisa. 9. Helvētiī oppida incendunt. 10. Helvētiī proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. 11. Belgae cum Germānīs continenter bellum gerunt.

80.

Sight Reading

1. Nautās moneō. 2. Amīcīs persuādēmus. 3. Tubās audītis. 4. Via per oppidum est longa. 5. Rhodanus¹ prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. 6. Gallī oppida inter Rhēnum et Rhodanum habent. 7. Helvētiī ad rīpam Rhodanī veniunt. 8. Nūntius litterās ab prōvinciā ad Aquītāniam portat. 9. Cōpiae gladiīs et pīlīs prope silvam contendunt. 10. Lēgātus cōpiās mūnīre² castra iubet. 11. Vidēmus sīgna Gallōrum, quī³ in castra veniunt. 12. Gladiī, quōs⁴ Rōmānī habent, sunt parvī.

¹ Rhodanus, -ī, m., the Rhone.

² to fortify.

³ who.

⁴ which.



Signum (Vēxillum)

LESSON VIII

Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.
Agreement of Adjectives.

81. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.—Latin adjectives have different endings to denote gender, number and case. Some are declined in the masculine like **amicus**, in the feminine like **porta** and in the neuter like **bellum**. Such adjectives are said to be of the first and second declensions.

82. For adjectives in **-us**, **-a**, **-um**, the model is **māgnus**, **māgna**, **māgnum**, *great, large*. Base: **māgn-**. Learn the declension of this word in the Appendix (11).

83.

VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*.

cotidiānus, -a, -um, *daily*.

dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense*.

multus, -a, -um, sing. *much*; pl. *many*.

reliquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest of*.

Adjectives given in section 24:

altus -a, -um.

lātus, -a, -um.

parvus, -a, -um.

longus, -a, -um.

māgnus, -a, -um.

ferē, adv., *almost*.

dūcō, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductūm**, *lead*.

praecēdō (**prae** + **cēdō**), -**cēdere**, -**cessī**, -**cessum**,

(*go before*), *excel, surpass*.

Decline together **parvūs gladius**, **bonus nauta**, **longum bellum**.

84.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Bonus amicus habet longum pilum:** *The good friend has a long javelin.*
2. **Parva filia altōs mūrōs videt:** *The little daughter sees the high walls.*
3. **Bonus nauta longa pīla habet:** *The good sailor has long javelins.*
4. **Parvī filiī bonōs nautās vident:** *The little sons see the good sailors.*

In these sentences, notice that each adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number and case; that is, if the noun is in the masculine singular accusative, the ending of the adjective must denote the masculine singular accusative. The ending of the adjective is not always the same as that of the noun, as seen in 3, **bonus nauta**, and 4, **bonōs nautās**. **Nauta** and **nautās**, of the first declension, being masculine (by exception), require the masculine forms of the adjective, **bonus** and **bonōs**, which are of the second declension.

85. RULE VIII.—*An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number and case.*

86. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.—

1. **Nauta longum gladium habet:** *The sailor has a long sword.*
2. **Gladius est longus:** *The sword is long.*

When an adjective qualifies a noun directly, as **longum** in the first sentence, it is an *attributive* adjective; when it completes the predicate, as in the second sentence, it is a *predicate* adjective.

87. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.—The possessive pronouns **meus, mea, meum, my, tuus, tua, tuum, thy, your,**

and **suus, sua, suum**, *his, her, its, their*, are declined like **māgnus**.¹

Notice the four meanings of **suus**. It will not be difficult to determine which meaning is intended in a sentence, for **suus** as a rule refers to the subject of the verb. Thus:

1. **Lēgātus suam filiam videt**: *The lieutenant sees his (own) daughter.*
2. **Filia suum amicum videt**: *The daughter sees her (own) friend.*

In the first sentence **suam** is translated *his*, for **lēgātus**, to which it refers, is masculine, but it is of the feminine gender, because it modifies **filiam** (Rule VIII); in the second, **suum** means *her*, for **filia** is feminine.

There are two other possessive pronouns, which are given in 92.

TRANSLATE

88. 1. Bonō amīcō. 2. Bonīs amīcīs. 3. Multōrum proeliōrum. 4. Longī mūrī. 5. Multae causae. 6. Parvum filium. 7. Bonī fili. 8. Tua pīla. 9. Per dēnsās silvās. 10. Mea amīcitia. 11. Trāns suam prōvinciam. 12. Cum bonō nautā.

89. 1. Silvae māgnī pāgī sunt dēnsae. 2. In dēnsā silvā sunt multī equī. 3. Angusta via est inter silvam et Rhodanum. 4. Rōmānī māgna castra movent. 5. Cōpia multīs gladiīs et pīlīs pūgnant. 6. Lēgātō suam filiā in mātirimōnium² dat. 7. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. 8. Ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt

¹ And are used as adjectives.

² in marriage.

³ Modifies cotīdiānīs.

90. 1. Daily battles. 2. The-rest-of the sailors. 3. To the narrow road. 4. Many friends praise the good sailors. 5. He fights with a small sword and a long javelin. 6. We establish friendship with the-rest-of the Gauls. 7. He sees your sword in the narrow road. 8. Mes-sala gives a long letter to his daughters. 9. They are coming into the large town of the Belgians. 10. The walls of the town are high.



Gladii

LESSON IX

The Second Declension: Nouns in *-er* and *-ir*.—Adjectives in *-er*. Present Indicative of *sum*.—Predicate Noun.

91. Some nouns of the second declension have lost the termination *-us* in the nominative, and end in *-er* or *-ir*.

MODEL WORDS

Puer, m., boy. Base: puer-			Ager, m., field. Base: agr-		Vir, m., man. Base: vir-	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
N.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
G.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
D.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs
Ac.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
Ab.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

How does the declension of **ager** differ from that of **puer**?

92. The termination **-us** of the masculine singular is wanting in some adjectives of the first and second declensions, and in the possessive pronouns **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**, *our*, and **vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**, *your*. Learn in the Appendix (II) the declension of **liber**, **libera**, **liberum**, *free*, and of **noster**.

93. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **sum**, *I am*.

PRIN. PARTS: sum , esse , fuī . Present stem: es- .			
<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
sum ,	¹ <i>I am.</i>	sumus ,	¹ <i>we are.</i>
es ,	<i>thou art, you are.</i>	estis ,	<i>you are.</i>
est ,	<i>he (she, it) is.</i>	sunt ,	¹ <i>they are.</i>

94. PREDICATE NOUN.—A noun in the predicate used

¹ In the forms **sum**, **sumus** and **sunt**, **e-** of the stem **es-** has been dropped.

with an intransitive verb or a verb in the passive voice and meaning the same person or thing as the subject is a predicate noun:—**Cōnsidius est lēgātus:** *Considius is a lieutenant.* The use with a passive verb will be illustrated in 105.

95. RULE IX.—*A predicate noun agrees with the subject in case.*

96.

VOCABULARY

ager, agrī, M., *field.*arma, -ōrum, N., *arms.*frūmentum, -ī, N., *grain;*pl. *standing grain, crops.*periculum, -ī, N., (*trial*),*peril, danger.*puer, -ī, M., *boy.*signifer, -ī, M. (*signum*), *standard-bearer.*liberī, -ōrum, M., *children* (free members of a household).puerī, -ōrum, M., *children*¹ (with regard to age).vesper, -ī, M., *evening.*vir, -ī, M., *man.*liber, -a, -um, *free.*mātūrus, -a, -um, (*early*), *ripe.*miser, -a, -um, *wretched.*noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*vester, vestra, vestrum, *your.*dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsūm, *defend, protect.*

TRANSLATE

97. 1. Multī virī ex agrīs veniunt. 2. Nostrī² ad vesperum pūgnant. 3. Haeduī amīcīs Helvētiōrum agrōs dant. 4. Perīculum signiferī vidēmus, et eum³ dēfendimus. 5. Signiferī signa in castra portant. 6. Estis filiae liberī virī. 7. Sumus amīcī miserōrum virōrum et puerōrum. 8. Vestrī liberī sunt māgnō⁴ in perīculō. 9. Reliquī virī

¹ Words similar in meaning are called *synonyms*.

² **Nostrī**, the masculine plural of **noster**, is often used without a noun with the meaning *our men, our forces*.

³ *him.*

⁴ When a preposition and an adjective are used with the same noun, the adjective often stands first.

oppidum dēfendunt. 10. Frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn sunt. 11. Puerīs persuādētis. 12. Reliquīs armīs puerōs defendit.

98. 1. The men of the small town protect the children. 2. The Haedui bring grain for our (men). 3. The long walls extend to the fields. 4. The arms of the Romans are swords and javelins. 5. You are a free man and the son of a free man. 6. He leads the troops out of the camp. 7. We are free. 8. Our fields are broad. 9. I am a standard-bearer of the Celts.



Signum (Aquila)

LESSON X

Present Indicative Passive (Conj. I-IV).—The Ablative of the Agent.

99. PASSIVE ENDINGS.—The present indicative passive is formed in general by adding to the present stem the following personal endings¹:

-r, <i>I</i>	-mur, <i>we</i>
-ris (or -re), <i>you (thou)</i>	-minī, <i>you</i>
-tur, <i>he, she, it</i>	-ntur, <i>they</i>

¹ Note these exceptions: In the first person singular -r is added to the corresponding active form. In the third conjugation, final e of the stem becomes i before -tur, -mur, -minī, and u before -ntur. See also 5, a.

100.

MODEL VERBS

PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

*Singular.**Plural.*laudor, *I am praised.*laudāmur, *we are praised.*laudāris (-re), *you are praised.*laudāmini, *you are praised.*laudātur, *he, etc., is praised.*laudantur, *they are praised.*moneor, *I am advised.*monēmur, *we are advised.*monēris (-re), *you are advised.*monēmini, *you are advised.*monētur, *he, etc., is advised.*monentur, *they are advised.*regor, *I am ruled.*regimur, *we are ruled.*regeris (-re), *you are ruled.*regimini, *you are ruled.*regitur,¹ *he, etc., is ruled.*reguntur, *they are ruled.*audior, *I am heard.*audīmur, *we are heard.*audīris (-re), *you are heard.*audīmini, *you are heard.*audītur, *he, etc., is heard.*audiuntur, *they are heard.*

In the same way, conjugate the passive of **portō**, **videō**, **dūcō**, **mūniō**.

101.

VOCABULARY

lingua, -ae, F., (tongue), lan-
guage.

nātūra, -ae, F., nature.

fīnitimī, -ōrum, M., neighbors.

locus, -ī, M. (pl. loca, -ōrum),
place.

populus, -ī, M., people, nation.

iugum, -ī, N., yoke, ridge.

ūnus, -a, -um, one. (For de-
clension, see App., 12.)

sub, prep with acc. and abl.,
under.²

¹ See footnote on page 32.

² Sub is used with the accusative to denote *motion* toward; with the ablative to denote *rest* in a place.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call (by name), name.*

expūgnō (ex + pūgnō, 58),¹ *capture (a town by storm).*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste, devastate.*

contineō (con + teneō), -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
(hold together), bound, hem in, restrain.

abdūcō (ab + dūcō, 83),¹ *lead away.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send.*

relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relīctum,
leave behind; passive, be left, remain.

102.

TRANSLATE

1. Portāris, iubēris, dūceris. 2. Continēmur, dūcimur
3. Dantur, mūniuntur. 4. Datur, mūnītur, iubētur.
5. Continēminī, dūciminī. 6. You are seen, sent, called.
7. He is led, ordered. 8. They are bounded. 9. They are led away. 10. It remains.

103.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Nautae victōriam nūntiant:** *The sailors report the victory.*
2. **Victōria ā nautīs nūntiātur:** *The victory is reported by sailors.*

Notice that **nautae**, the subject in the first sentence, is in the ablative in the second. The ablative here denotes the doer or agent of the action, and answers the question, *By whom?* The ablative so used may be called the *ablative of the agent*.

104. RULE X.—*With a passive verb the person by whom an action is done is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

105. The passive verbs with which a predicate noun may be used (94) are those meaning *to be named, called, chosen, made* and the like:

¹ Principal parts the same as those of the simple verb.

Ariovistus ā populō Rōmānō¹ amicus appellātur: *Ariovistus is called friend by the Roman people.*

TRANSLATE

106. 1. Celtae nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur. 2. Celtās² Gallōs³ appellāmus. 3. Finitimī Helvētiōrum pācantur. 4. Sīgnum ab Helvētiīs vidētur. 5. Cōpiaē Rōmānōrum sub iugum⁴ ab Helvētiīs mittuntur. 6. Relinquitur ūna per Sēquanōs via. 7. Castra mūrō et fossā ā lēgātō mūniuntur. 8. Agrī Haeduōrum vāstantur, liberī abdūcuntur, oppida ab finitimīs expūgnantur. 9. Locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur. 10. Amīcī appellāmur.

107. 1. The lieutenant is warned by his son. 2. Many messengers are sent to the camp. 3. The horses are led into the broad field. 4. The town is captured by the rest-of the Belgians. 5. The towns are fortified by high walls. 6. The forest is devastated by the Aquitani. 7. The boys are named Marcus and Julius. 8. We are defended by the nature of the place.

LESSON XI

The Third Declension: Nouns in -l, -o, -r.—Imperfect Indicative of *sum*.—The Dative of the Possessor.

108. GENITIVE AND GENDER.—The third declension includes all words whose genitive singular ends in *-is*. The gender may be masculine, feminine or neuter.

¹ **Rōmānus**, when used with **populus**, follows it.

² Direct object.

³ Predicate accusative.

⁴ The **iugum** referred to consisted of two spears set upright in the ground with another placed across them. A conquered army was made to pass under this, to indicate submission.

109. NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.—In some words of the third declension, as in those of 110, the nominative singular has no case-ending. It may be the same as the base (22), as in **cōsul** and **mercātor**. It may be a modified form, as in **legiō**, which drops a final **-n-** of the base, or **pater**, in which **-e-** appears before final **-r**.

110.**MODEL NOUNS**

Cōsul, M., <i>consul.</i> Base: cōsul-		Legiō, F., <i>legion.</i> legiōn-	Mercātor, M., <i>trader.</i> mercātor-	Pater, M., <i>father.</i> patr-	END- INGS.
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	
N.	cōsul	legiō	mercātor	pater	—
G.	cōsulis	legiōnis	mercātōris	patris	-is
D.	cōsulī	legiōnī	mercātōrī	patrī	-ī
Ac.	cōsulem	legiōnem	mercātōrem	patrem	-em
Ab.	cōsule	legiōne	mercātōre	patre	-e
	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	mercātōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
G.	cōsulūm	legiōnūm	mercātōrūm	patrum	-um
D.	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	mercātōribus	patribus	-ibus
Ac.	cōsulēs	legiōnēs	mercātōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
Ab.	cōsulibus	legiōnibus	mercātōribus	patribus	-ibus

Māter, mother, and **frāter**, brother, are declined like **pater**.

III. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF sum.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
eram, I was.	erāmus, we were.
erās, you were.	erātis, you were.
erat, he (she, it) was.	erant, they were.

112.

VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, -ī, N., <i>plan.</i>	mercātor, -ōris, M., <i>trader, merchant.</i>
cōnsul, -is, M., <i>consul.</i>	
Caesar, Caesaris, M., <i>Caesar.</i>	multitūdō, multitūdinis, F.
Pīsō, Pīsōnis, M., <i>Piso</i> (a Roman name).	(<i>multus</i>), <i>great number.</i>
homō, hominis, M., <i>man, human being.</i> ¹	pater, patris, M., <i>father.</i>
legiō, -ōnis, F., <i>legion.</i>	septentriōnēs, -um, M., <i>the north.</i>
	saepe, adv., <i>often.</i>

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *go back and forth, resort.*

vergō, vergere, —, —, *incline, slope, lie.*

Decline *parva legiō, bonus cōsul.*

113.

TRANSLATE

1. Legiōne cōnsulis. 2. Patrēs mercātōrum. 3. Multitūdinem hominum. 4. Cum Caesare et legiōnibus.
5. Ad septentriōnēs. 6. For the merchant and the neighbors. 7. To (ad) the consuls, Piso² and Messala.
8. By the man. 9. By the plan.

114.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. Cōsul multās legiōnēs habet: *The consul has many legions.*
2. Cōsulī multae legiōnēs sunt: *The consul has (to the consul there are) many legions.*

Both sentences are to be translated the same way. Possession may be expressed by *habeō* (*have*), as in sentence 1, or by *sum* with a dative, as in sentence 2. If *sum* is used, the possessor is in the dative (cōsulī) and the thing possessed in the nominative (legiōnēs). The

¹ Synonyms: *homō* means *man* distinguished from lower animals; *vir* (91) means *man* distinguished from woman. ² Same case as *consuls*.

dative so used is called the *dative of the possessor* and is to be translated as the subject of *have* in English.

115. RULE XI.—*The dative of the possessor is used with the verb sum.*

TRANSLATE

- 116.** 1. Mārcus Messāla et Mārcus Pisō erant cōsulēs.¹
 2. Pater Casticī erat amīcus populī Rōmānī. 3. Ad Belgās
 mercātōrēs nōn saepe commeant.
 4. Gallia vergit ad septentriōnēs.
 5. Multitūdō hominum erat in Helvētiā.
 6. Ūna legiō² erat in Galliā.
 7. Caesar in Galliam contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit.³ 8. Ūnā legiōne⁴
 Caesar longum mūrū et fossam perdūcit.⁴ 9. Cōsiliū erat Helvētiis.
 10. Meō frātrī sunt multī equī.
 11. Mercātōribus erant Rōmāna arma.



Legiōnārius
(Soldier of a legion)

- 117.** 1. Caesar was commander-in-chief⁵ of many legions. 2. Caesar had many legions. 3. A great number of men capture the towns. 4. The towns are captured by a great number of men. 5. The province is subdued by the consul. 6. We were traders in Aquitania. 7. The brothers of the consul have many plans.⁷ 8. You were the standard-bearers of the Roman legions.

¹ Rome for about five centuries B.C. was a republic. There were two presidents, called consuls, elected annually.

² The Roman army was divided into legions. A legion varied in number of men, but in Caesar's time consisted of about 3,600.

³ *pervenit* = *per* + *venit*, *comes through, arrives*.

⁴ *perdūcit* = *per* + *dūcit*, *leads through*; with *fossam* and *mūrū* it may be translated *constructs*. ⁵ See 74. ⁶ *imperātor*. ⁷ Translate sentence 7 in two ways.

LESSON XII

Third Declension: Neuter Nouns in *-men* and *-us*.—
Imperfect Indicative (Conj. I).

118. GENITIVE AND GENDER.—Before declining a noun, note carefully its *genitive* and *gender*. The genitive is important because it shows the base (22). The gender should be noted because a neuter noun requires different endings from those of a masculine or feminine in the accusative singular, and the nominative and accusative plural.

119.

MODEL NOUNS

Flūmen, N., <i>river.</i> Base: flūmin-		Tempus, N., <i>time.</i> tempor-	Opus, N., <i>work.</i> oper-	ENDINGS.
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	
N.	flūmen	tempus	opus	—
G.	flūminis	temporis	operis	-is
D.	flūminī	temporī	operī	-ī
Ac.	flūmen	tempus	opus	—
Ab.	flūmine	tempore	opere	-e
	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	flūmina	tempora	opera	-a
G.	flūminum	temporum	operum	-um
D.	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	-ibus
Ac.	flūmina	tempora	opera	-a
Ab.	flūminibus	temporibus	operibus	-ibus

120. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.—
The imperfect tense of the indicative is formed by add-

ing to the present stem a *tense-sign* and the personal endings. The sign of the imperfect tense is **-ba-**. The personal endings are those given in sections 35 and 99, except that **-m** is used instead of **-ō** in the first person singular active: active, **laudā-ba-m**; passive, **laudā-ba-r**.

121. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I was praising, I praised.</i>		<i>I was praised.</i>	
laudābam	laudābāmus	laudābar	laudābāmur
laudābās	laudābātis	laudābāris (-re)	laudābāmini
laudābat	laudābant	laudābātur	laudābantur

Conjugate the imperfect of **dō**,¹ **portō** and **nūntiō**.

122. USE OF THE IMPERFECT TENSE.—The imperfect indicative represents action as going on in past time: *Caesar was praising*, or *Caesar praised* (**laudābat**) *his troops*. It may express repeated or customary action: *Caesar kept praising*, or *used to praise* (**laudābat**) *his troops*. It is also used in descriptions: **Flūmen erat inter Belgās et Celtās**. *A river was between the Belgians and the Celts*. (See also 176.)

123. VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, M., year.	tempus, temporis, N., time.
flūmen, flūminis, N., river.	altitūdō, -inis, F. (altus), height, depth.
nōmen, nōminis, N., name.	coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F., conspiracy.
genus, generis, N., race, tribe.	celeriter, adv., quickly.
opus, operis, N., work, fortification.	

¹ For the quantity of **-a-** in the present stem of **dō**, see footnote 2, page 18.

ēnūntiō (**ē** + **nūntiō**, 38), (*speak out*), *disclose, report*.

vocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *call*.

revocō (**re** + **vocō**), *call back, recall*.

TRANSLATE

124. 1. *Revocābāmus, ēnūntiābāmus.* 2. *Ēnūntiābātis, pācābant.* 3. *Commeābam.* 4. *Portābātur, dabantur.* 5. *Portābās, portābāris.* 6. *Puerum appellābat.* 7. *Nōmen oppidī erat Genāva.* 8. *Altitūdō flūminis est parva.* 9. *Helvētīi cum finitimīs amīcitiam cōfirmābant.* 10. *Ariovistus amīcus populī Rōmānī appellābātur.* 11. *Propter tempus annī nōn pūgnābant.* 12. *Nostrī ab opere revocābantur.* 13. *Multa genera hominum erant in Galliā.* 14. *Helvētīi oppidum celeriter expūgnābant.* 15. *Coniūrātiōnem Helvētīis ēnūntiābat.* 16. *Helvētia continētur flūmine Rhēnō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit.*

125. 1. The name of the tribe. 2. By the conspiracy. 3. We were recalled. 4. You (pl.) were called. 5. The boys were carrying trumpets and swords. 6. The grain was not given. 7. The Seine and Marne were rivers of Gaul. 8. Gaul extends from³ the Rhone river. 9. The camp is fortified by the work of the troops. 10. The towns were quickly stormed. 11. The lieutenants recalled our men from³ the work. 12. The conspiracy was reported to the Celts. 13. Marcus and Titus were Roman names.

LESSON XIII—REVIEW

126. 1. Inflect the model words in Lessons VIII–XII. 2. Conjugate the present and imperfect indicative of **sum**. 3. How do adjectives agree (85)? 4. After

¹ *which.* ² **Helvētius** (or **Helvēticus**), **-a**, **-um**, proper adj., *Helvetian*; **Helvētīi**, **-ōrum**, the *Helvetii*; **Helvētia**, **-ae**, *Helvetia* (the country).

³ Use a Latin preposition.

what verbs is a predicate noun used (94, 105)? 5.
How is possession expressed in Latin (114)?

127.**Review Vocabulary**

lingua	mercātor	dēnsus	ferē
nātūra	pater	lātus	saepe
annus	altitūdō	longus	sub
fīnitimī	coniūrātiō	māgnus	appellō
locus	homō	mātūrus	commeō
populus	legiō	multus	ēnūntiō
ager	multitūdō	parvus	expūgnō
puer	septentriōnēs	reliquus	vocō
sīgnifer	flūmen	ūnus	revocō
vesper	nōmen	liber	vāstō
vir	genus	miser	contineō
arma	opus	meus	dūcō
cōnsilium	tempus	tuus	abdūcō
frūmentum	altus	suus	dēfendō
iugum	angustus	noster	mittō
perīculum	bonus	vester	praecēdō
cōnsul	cotīdiānus	celeriter	relinquō
			vergō

Mention English derivatives.

128.**Review Sentences**

1. Angusta via est inter silvam et Rhodanum.
2. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt. 3. Ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt. 4. Celtae nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur. 5. Sīgnum ab Helvētiīs vidētur.
6. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum sub iugum ab Helvētiīs mittuntur. 7. Relinquitur ūna per Sēquanōs via. 8. Agrī Hae-
duōrum vāstantur, liberī abdūcuntur, oppida ab Helvētiīs expūgnantur. 9. Undique¹ locī nātūrā Helvētiī conti-

¹ undique, adv., on all sides.

nentur. 10. Mārcus Messāla et Mārcus Pīsō erant cōn-
sulēs. 11. Pater Casticī erat amīcus populī Rōmānī.
12. Ad Belgās mercātōrēs nōn saepe commeant. 13. Gallia
vergit ad septentriōnēs. 14. Ūna legiō erat in Galliā.
15. Caesar in Galliam contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit.
16. Legiōne Caesar longum mūrum et fossam perdūcit.
17. Frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant.

129.

Sight Reading

1. Legiōnēs reliqua loca vāstābant. 2. Locus erat
idōneus¹ castrīs. 3. Flūmen est nōn longum. 4. Multa
et² longa flūmina sunt in Galliā. 5. Puerī erant in perī-
culō. 6. Nostrae legiōnēs erant in armīs extrā³ castra.
7. Reliquī Gallī ab Helvētiīs laudābantur. 8. Helvētiī
Rōmānās cōpiās sub iugum mittunt. 9. Coniūrātiōnem
Gallōrum mercātōrēs, quī ā prōvinciā Rōmānā veniunt,
ēnūntiant. 10. Segusiāvī⁴ sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns
Rhodanum prīmī.⁵



Pīlum

LESSON XIV

Imperfect Indicative (Conj. II-IV).—Apposition.—
Review of Nominative Case.

130. The second conjugation forms the imperfect
like the first (120): **monē-ba-m**.

¹ idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable*. ² Do not translate *et*. ³ extrā, prep.
with acc., *outside of*. ⁴ A tribe on the west side of the Rhone.
⁵ prīmū, -a, -um, *first*.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I was advising, I advised.</i>		<i>I was advised.</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbās	monēbātis	monēbāris (-re)	monēbāminī
monēbat	monēbant	monēbātur	monēbantur

131. The third conjugation lengthens the final *-e-* of the stem, before the tense-sign: **regē-ba-m.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I was ruling, I ruled.</i>		<i>I was ruled.</i>	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbās	regēbātis	regēbāris (-re)	regēbāminī
regēbat	regēbant	regēbātur	regēbantur

132. The fourth conjugation inserts *-ē-* before the tense-sign, and shortens the final *-ī-* of the stem (69): **audiē-ba-m.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I was hearing, I heard.</i>		<i>I was heard.</i>	
audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (-re)	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

Conjugate the imperfect of **habeō** (45), **mittō** (101), **mūniō** (70).

133. DEFINITION.—A noun added to another noun or pronoun to explain or describe it, and meaning the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*.

134. MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Cassius cōsul cum Gallīs contendēbat:** *Cassius, the consul, was fighting with the Gauls.*

2. **Puerī Cassium cōnsulem vidēbant:** *The children saw Cassius, the consul.*
 3. **Patrem Cassī cōsulis vidēbant:** *They saw the father of Cassius, the consul.*

In these sentences, **cōnsul** is used as an appositive to explain **Cassius** and is put in the same case.

135. RULE XII.—*A noun in apposition with another noun or a pronoun agrees with it in case.*

NOTE.—Later it will be seen that a phrase or a clause as well as a single word may be in apposition with a noun or a pronoun.

136.**VOCABULARY**

concilium, -ī, N., <i>council, assembly.</i>	imperātor, -tōris, M., <i>commander-in-chief.</i>
hīberna, -ōrum, N., <i>winter-quarters.</i>	decimus, -a, -um, <i>tenth.</i>
pābulum, -ī, N., <i>fodder.</i>	perītus, -a, -um, <i>experienced, skilful.</i>
explōrātor, -tōris, M., <i>scout.</i>	satis, adv., <i>sufficiently, enough</i>
	semper, adv., <i>always.</i>

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *pass the winter.*

dīmittō (dī + mittō, 101), *send away, dismiss.*

ēdūcō (ē + dūcō, 83), *lead out.*

suppetō (sub + petō), -petere, -petīvī, -petitum, *be on hand.*

TRANSLATE

- 137.** 1. **Veniēbant, incendēbant, incolēbant.** 2. **Vidēhāmus, dūcēbātis, dēfendēbās.** 3. **Iubēbātur, vidēbāmur, dēfendēbāminī.** 4. **Caesar imperātor in Galliam contendēbat.** 5. **Legiō quam¹ habēbat erat decima.** 6. **Relinquē-**

¹ *which.*

bātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. 7. Helvētiī agrōs Haedu-
 ōrum, amicōrum populi Rōmānī, vāstābant. 8. Castra
 semper mūniēbantur. 9. Trēs¹ legiōnēs quae² circum
 Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit. 10. Caesar
 suōs³ ā proeliō continēbat. 11. Pābulī satis māgna cō-
 pia nōn suppetēbat. 12. Celeriter concilium dīmittēbātur.
 13. Pūblius Cōnsidius, quī perītus habēbātur,⁴ cum ex-
 plōrātōribus mittēbātur.

138. 1. I was led, you were seen, he was sent. 2. We
 contended, you (pl.) inhabited. 3. The town was fortified.
 4. They moved the camp from that⁵ place. 5. Caesar sent
 Considius, the lieutenant, with scouts. 6. He quickly
 dismissed the council. 7. Caesar's forces were restrained⁶
 from battle. 8. Three legions were led out of⁷ winter-
 quarters. 9. They were reporting the victory to the Bel-
 gians, a nation of Gaul.

139. Review of the Nominative Case

The nominative case may be used as follows:

1. As the subject of a finite verb (26).
2. In the predicate with—
 - (a) certain intransitive verbs meaning *be*,
become, *seem*, etc. (94.)
 - (b) certain passive verbs meaning *be made*, *be*
called, *chosen*, *named*, etc. (105.)
3. In apposition with another nominative. (135.)

ILLUSTRATIONS:

1. Caesar erat imperātor.
2. Caesar appellābātur imperātor.
3. Caesar imperātor ab amicīs laudābātur.

¹ three. ² which. ³ his soldiers. ⁴ was held, in the sense
 of was considered. ⁵ eō. ⁶ continueō. ⁷ out of = ex

LESSON XV

Third Declension (continued).—The Ablative of Specification.

140. NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.—Some nouns of the third declension form the nominative singular by adding **-s** to the base. The base may end in **-b, -p, -d, -t, -c** or **-g**. Bases ending in **-d** or **-t** drop these letters in the nominative: **lapis, stone**, for **lapids**, from base **lapid-**; **mīles, soldier**, for **mīlits**, from base **mīlit-**. Bases in **-c** or **-g** have **-x** in the nominative, for **cs** and **gs = x** (2, c): **dux, leader**, for **ducs**, from base **duc-**; **rēx, king**, for **rēgs**, from base **rēg-**.

141. Learn the declension of **lēx, mīles, prīnceps, cīvītās** and **caput**, in the Appendix (4, 5).

142.**VOCABULARY**

numerus, -ī, M., number.	Dumnorix, -īgis, M., Dumno-
auctōritās, -tātis, F., influ-	rix.
ence.	Orgetorix, -īgis, M., Orgetorix.
cīvītās, -tātis, F., state, tribe.	virtūs -tūtis, F. (vir), (manli-
lēx, lēgis, F., law.	ness), virtue, valor.
pāx, pācis, F., peace.	caput, capitis, N., head.
mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier.	apud, prep. with acc., among.
prīnceps, prīncipis, M., chief.	

convocō (con + vocō 123), call together.

143.**MODEL SENTENCE**

Galli et Belgae linguā et lēgibus differunt ¹: The Gauls and Belgians differ in language and laws.

¹ From **differō, differ.**

In what *respect* do the Gauls and Belgians differ? **Linguā** and **lēgibus**, which answer this question, are called *ablatives of specification*.

144. RULE XIII.—*The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which anything is or is done.*

TRANSLATE

145. 1. Apud Helvētiōs erat prīnceps, Orgetorīx nōmine. 2. Auctōritās Orgetorīgis erat māgna. 3. Ad cīvitatēs mittēbātur. 4. Cum cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfīrmābat. 5. Militum māgnū numerū habēbat. 6. Mīlītēs conveniēbant.¹ 7. Lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem, Haeduum, mittēbant. 8. Caesar prīncipēs Haeduōrum, quōrum² māgnā cōpiā³ in castrīs habēbat, convōcābat. 9. Numerus capitum erat decem. 10. Vidēmus capita equōrum. 11. Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. 12. Pīlū et gladius erant mīlītī.⁴

146. 1. The chiefs of the Haedui were called together by Caesar. 2. Ambassadors were sent to^b Dumnorix, the Haeduan. 3. They send Orgetorix to^b the tribes. 4. Peace was established with the-rest-of the tribes. 5. Many soldiers came from^b the province. 6. Dumnorix surpassed many men in influence among the Haedui. 7. The Romans did not surpass the Helvetians in number of soldiers.

¹ **conveniēbant** = **con** (*together*) + **veniēbant**.

² *of whom.*

³ *number.*

⁴ See 115.

^b See 49, note.

LESSON XVI

Future Tense (Conj. I, II).—*Sum* : Future Tense.

147. FORMATION OF THE FUTURE INDICATIVE.—The future tense of the first and second conjugations is formed by adding to the present stem the tense-sign *bi-* and the personal endings (35, 99). In the first person singular, *-i-* of the tense-sign disappears before the ending *-ō*; in the third person plural it becomes *-u-*; and in the second person singular passive it becomes *-e-*.

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE.

148.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>I shall¹ praise.</i>	<i>I shall be praised.</i>
laudābō laudābimus	laudābor laudābimur
laudābis laudābitis	laudāberis (-re) laudābiminī
laudābit laudābunt	laudābitur laudābuntur

149.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>I shall advise.</i>	<i>I shall be advised.</i>
monēbō monēbimus	monēbor monēbimur
monēbis monēbitis	monēberis (-re) monēbiminī
monēbit monēbunt	monēbitur monēbuntur

Conjugate the future of *dō*, *appellō*, *portō* and *habeō*.

¹ I, or we, *shall* praise ; you, he, or they, *will* praise.

150.

FUTURE TENSE OF *sum*.

erō, <i>I shall be.</i>	erimus, <i>we shall be.</i>
eris, <i>you will be.</i>	eritis, <i>you will be.</i>
erit, <i>he (she, it) will be.</i>	erunt, <i>they will be.</i>

151.

VOCABULARY

memoria, -ae, F., memory. *pedes, peditis, M., foot-soldier.*
dux, ducis, M., leader, guide. *salūs, salūtis, F., safety.*
rēx, rēgis, M., king. *fortiter, adv., bravely.*
eques, equitis, M., horseman. *atque, conj., and, and also.²*
obses, obsidis, M. F., hostage.¹ *sed, conj., but.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold.

memoriā teneō, (hold in memory), remember.

TRANSLATE

152. 1. Nūntiābunt. 2. Iubēbis. 3. Vocābitis, vocā-
 biminī. 4. Vidēbimus, vidēbimur. 5. Castra movēbuntur.
 6. Equitēs proeliis cum Gallīs fortiter pūgnābunt. 7. Obsidēs
 Ariovistō, rēgī Germānōrum, dabuntur. 8. Caesar equōs
 peditibus dabit. 9. Ā Rōmānīs virtūs Helvētiōrum me-
 moriā tenēbitur. 10. Cassius bellō cum Helvētiīs dux
 Rōmānōrum erit. 11. Explōrātōrēs erunt māgnō in perī-
 culō. 12. Populus Rōmānus Ariovistum rēgem atque
 amīcum appellābit. 13. Cōnsilia bellī ā ducibus nōn
 ēnūntiābuntur.

153. 1. I shall see, give, report. 2. You will call,
 carry, have. 3. They will be seen. 4. The victory will be

¹ A hostage was a person given by one nation to another, to be held as a pledge of good faith.

² When *atque* connects two words, it emphasizes the second.

reported. 5. You will be considered¹ skilful. 6. The Helvetians will not give hostages to the Romans. 7. The leaders will remember the first victory of our horsemen. 8. The valor of the Gauls will be praised, but they will be subdued by the Roman leader. 9. The hostages are seeking² safety by flight, and will be in the forest.



Eques

LESSON XVII

Third Declension (continued).—The Ablative of Time.

154. SPECIAL SINGULAR ENDINGS.—Some nouns of the third declension have in the singular the following endings:

Acc. -im or -em (nāvis, puppis, sēmentis, turris).

Abl. -ī or -e (avis, civis, classis, collis, fīnis, īgnis, nāvis, orbis, puppis, sēmentis, turris).

Abl. ī (neuters in -e, -al or -ar).

155. SPECIAL PLURAL ENDINGS.—The following nouns

¹ habeo. See 137, 13.

² petunt.

have **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-ēs** or **-is** in the accusative plural:

1. Nouns in **-is** or **-ēs**, having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular.¹

2. Most nouns in **-ns** or **-rs**.

3. Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x**, following a consonant.

Neuters in **-e**, **-al** or **-ar** have **-ium** in the genitive plural and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative plural.

156. Learn the declension of **hostis**, **nāvis**, **mōns**, **nox**, **cubile** and **animal** in the Appendix (6, 7).

157.

VOCABULARY

hōra, -ae, F., *hour*.

vigilia, -ae, F., *watch* (a fourth of the night).

aestās, -tātis, F., *summer*.

animal, -is, N., *animal*.

Arar, **Araris** (acc. **-im**; abl.

-ī), M., the *Saone* (a river of Gaul).

fīnis, -is, M., *end*, *limit*; pl. *territory*.

hostis, -is, M., *enemy*.

nāvis, -is, F., *ship*.

mare, **maris**, N., *sea*.

mōns, **montis**, M., *mountain*.

pōns, **pontis**, M., *bridge*.

pars, **partis**, F., *part*, *side*, *direction*.

nox, **noctis**, F., *night*.

duo, **duae**, **duo**, *two*. (For declension see App., 14.)

proximus, -a, -um, *nearest*, *next*.

tertius, -a, -um, *third*.

quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*.

inflūō (**in** + **fluō**, *flow*), **-fluere**, **-fluxī**, **-fluxum**, *flow into*.

158.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Primā hōrā castra movēbantur**: *At the first hour the camp was being moved.*

¹ Nouns having the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular are called *parisyllabic*.

2. *Ūnā aestāte Caesar duo bella gerēbat: Caesar carried on two wars in one summer.*

The ablatives *hōrā* and *aestāte* denote *time*. The former answers the question *When?*, the latter, the question *Within what time?*

159. RULE XIV.—*The ablative is used to denote time when or within which.*

160.

TRANSLATE

1. Gallia est dīvisā in partēs trēs. 2. Ūnam partem incolunt Belgae. 3. Helvētiī in Germānōrum finibus bellum gerunt. 4. Ūnā ex¹ parte Helvētia flūmine Rhēnō continētur; alterā² ex¹ parte monte Iūrā. 5. Fīnēs Helvētiōrum sunt angustī. 6. Ex Genāvā pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. 7. Pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, Caesar iubet rescindī.³ 8. Flūmen est Arar, quod⁴ per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. 9. Quārtā horā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit.⁵ 10. Tertiā vigiliā legiōnēs trēs ē castrīs ēdūcēbat. 11. Hostēs⁶ ad flūmen Axonam contendēbant, quod erat post nostra castra. 12. Proximā nocte castra movēbō. 13. Mare altīs montibus continēbātur.

161. 1. The enemy had winter-quarters near⁷ the Saone river. 2. The war was carried on with⁸ a great number of soldiers. 3. The soldiers are coming through the territory of the Sequani. 4. (At) that⁹ time Dumnorix was chief of the tribe. 5. The leaders of the enemy heard the plan of the messenger in the first watch. 6. Many ani-

¹ *on*. See page 31, footnote 4.

² *another*.

³ *to be destroyed*.

⁴ *which*.

⁵ *reached*.

⁶ The plural *hostēs* is to be translated *enemy*.

⁷ *prope* (49).

⁸ See 74.

⁹ *eō*.

mals will be in the fields in the summer. 7. The enemy's horsemen ¹will have good horses. 8. The night is divided into watches.



Nāvis

LESSON XVIII

Gender in the Third Declension.—Future Tense (Conj. III, IV).

162. GENDER.—The gender of nouns of the third declension may be determined partly by the general rules (12). The following special rules will be helpful, though there are important exceptions to each:

1. Masculine: Nouns in **-ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs** (gen. **-idis, -itis**).

2. Feminine: Nouns in **-ās, -ēs** (gen. **-is**), **-is, -ūs** (gen. **-ūdis, -ūtis**), **-x, -s** (following a consonant), **-dō, -gō, -iō**.

3. Neuters: Nouns in **a, c, e, l, n, t, ar, ur, us** (gen. **-eris, -oris**).

¹ See 115.

163. In the future of verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, the tense-sign **-bi-** (147) is not found. The tenses are formed by adding the personal endings to a modified form of the present stem. The ending of the first person singular in the active voice is **-m**.

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE.

164.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I shall rule.</i>		<i>I shall be ruled.</i>	
regam	regēmus	regar	regēmur
regēs	regētis	regēris (-re)	regēmini
reget	regent	regētur	regentur

165.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>I shall hear.</i>		<i>I shall be heard.</i>	
audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (-re)	audiēmini
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

Conjugate the future of **dūcō** and **mūniō**.

166.

VOCABULARY

auxilium, -ī, N., *aid*; pl.

auxiliary forces.

Ōceanus, -ī, M., *ocean.*

vīcus, -ī, M., *village.*

collis, -is, M., *hill.*

ubi, adv., *where, when.*

quod, conj., *because.*

petō, **petere**, **petīvī**, **petitum**, *seek, ask.*

pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, *place, pitch (a camp).*

TRANSLATE

167. 1. Incolēmus, veniēmus, dīvidēmus. 2. Contendētis, mittēminī, dēfendēminī. 3. Mūniam, veniēs, dūcet. 4. Vocābor, vidēbor, dēfendar. 5. Nocte ad oppidum veniet. 6. Dux legiōnēs et auxilia ad collem mittet. 7. Locus ab mīlitibus, quī ex prōvinciā veniunt, mūniētur. 8. Tribus¹ annīs vīcī et oppida ab Helvētiīs incenduntur. 9. Quod perīculum māgnū est, hostēs fugā salūtem petent. 10. Collis, ubi castra pōnentur, nōn est altus. 11. Bellum in Galliā gerētur, quod Helvētiī sunt hostēs populī Rōmānī. 12. Aquitānia ad eam² partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet.

168. 1. You (sing.) will defend, be defended. 2. You (pl.) will lead, be led. 3. We shall fortify, contend, lead. 4. They will be led away. 5. The wars will be carried on. 6. The fields of the Belgians will be inhabited. 7. Caesar will give a part of the village to the Gauls. 8. The auxiliary forces will be in the winter-quarters across the Rhone, where (there) is much grain. 9. The Sequani will seek aid from³ Caesar, because Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, is in their territory. 10. We shall persuade the soldiers.

LESSON XIX—REVIEW

169. 1. Inflect the model words in Lessons XIV–XVIII. 2. How is the imperfect tense formed (120)? 3. How does the future of the first and second conjugations differ from the future of the third and fourth (163)? 4. What nouns have **-ium** in the genitive plural (155)?

¹ three.² that.³ a.

5. What is the difference between a predicate noun and a noun in apposition ?

170.**Review Vocabulary**

hōra	aestās	collis	semper
memoria	auctōritās	fīnis	apud
vigilia	cīvitās	hostis	atque
auxilium	imperātor	nāvis	quod
concilium	mōns	animal	sed
hīberna	pars	caput	ubi
numerus	pōns	mare	convocō
pābulum	prīnceps	decimus	hiemō
vīcus	salūs	perītus	teneō
dux	virtūs	proximus	dīmīttō
lēx	eques	quārtus	ēdūcō
nox	miles	tertius	īnfluō
pāx	obses	fortiter	petō
rēx	pedes	satis	suppetō
			pōnō

171.**Review Sentences**

1. Trēs legiōnēs, quae¹ circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit. 2. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. 3. Pābulī satis māgna cōpia nōn suppetēbat. 4. Pūblius Cōnsidius, quī² perītus habēbātur, cum explōrātōribus mit-tēbātur. 5. Cum cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam Orge-torīx cōnfīrmābat. 6. Caesar prīncipēs Haeduōrum, quō-rum³ māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, convocat. 7. Helvētiī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt. 8. Gallia est dīvīsa in partēs trēs. 9. Ūnam partem incolunt Belgae. 10. Helvētiī in Germānōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. 11. Ūnā ex parte Helvētia flūmine Rhēnō continētur, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā. 12. Ex Genāvā pōns ad Helvētiōs

¹ *which.*² *who.*³ *of whom.*

pertinet. 13. Pontem, quī¹ erat ad Genāvam, Caesar iubet rescindī. 14. Flūmen est Arar, quod¹ per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit. 15. Helvētīi legātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt.

172.

Sight Reading

1. Ūnam partem Galliae Aquītānī incolunt. 2. Ūna pars continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum. 3. Belgae pertinent ad inferiōrem² partem flūminis Rhēnī. 4. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam partem Ōceanī quae¹ est ad Hispāniam pertinet. 5. Dumnorīx Helvētīis erit amīcus, quod ex eā³ cīvitate Orgetorīgis filiam in mātirimōnium dūcet. 6. Is⁴ pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus. 7. Cīvitas Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. 8. Allobrogēs, quī⁵ trāns Rhodanum vicōs habēbant, ad Caesarem veniunt. 9. Legiōne, quam¹ habet, atque mīlitibus, quī⁵ ex prōvinciā convenient, ā Genāvā ad montem Iūram, quī¹ finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētīis dīvidit, Caesar mūrum et fossam perdūcet. 10. Trēs cōpiārum partēs Helvētīi trāns flūmen dūcēbant.

LESSON XX

The Perfect Indicative Active.—Irregular Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

173. ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.

—The *perfect stem* is found by dropping -ī of the perfect indicative active, the third of the principal parts (17): **laudāv-ī, monu-ī, rēx-ī, audīv-ī.** The perfect indicative active is conjugated by adding to the perfect stem the following endings:

¹ *which.*² *lower.*³ *that.*⁴ *this.*⁵ *who.*

*Singular.***-ī, I****-istī, you****-it, he, etc.***Plural.***-imus, we****-istis, you****-ērunt, or -ēre, they****174. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.***I have praised, or I praised.***laudāvī****laudāvimus****laudāvistī****laudāvistis****laudāvit****laudāvērunt (-ēre)***I have advised, or I advised.***monuī****monuimus****monuistī****monuistis****monuit****monuērunt (-ēre)***I have ruled, or I ruled.***rēxī****rēximus****rēxistī****rēxistis****rēxit****rēxērunt (-ēre)***I have heard, or I heard.***audīvī****audīvimus****audīvistī****audīvistis****audīvit****audīvērunt (-ēre)****175. PERFECT INDICATIVE OF sum.****fui, I have been, was.****fuiumus, we have been, were.****fuistī, you have been, were.****fuistis, you have been, were.****fuit, he has been, was.****fuērunt (-ēre), they have been, were.**

Conjugate the perfect indicative active of **dō**, **persuādeō**, **dīvidō**, **mūniō** and **veniō**.

176.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Rhēnum nōn vīdimus:** *We have not seen the Rhine.*
2. **Haedui, quod Helvētīi agrōs vāstābant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt:** *The Haedui sent ambassadors to Caesar, because the Helvetii were devastating (their) fields.*

The Latin perfect may be translated in two ways: (1) It may be equivalent to the English present perfect (with *have*), and may be called the *present perfect*: **vīdimus**, sentence 1. (2) It is more frequently equivalent to the English past tense, and may be called the *historical perfect*: **mīsērunt**, sentence 2.

The historical perfect is used to state the main events of the past; the imperfect frequently states subordinate events, or what was true when the main events occurred: **Caesar in castra vēnit; litterās portābat.** *Caesar came into the camp; (at the time when he came) he was carrying a letter.*

177. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.—Nine adjectives have the ending **-īus** (for **-ī**, **-ae**, **-ī**) in the genitive singular, and **-ī** (for **-ō**, **-ae**, **-ō**) in the dative singular of all genders. They are:

alius , -a, -ud, <i>another, other.</i>	sōlus , -a, -um, <i>alone, only.</i>
alter , -era, -erum, <i>the other.</i>	tōtus , -a, -um, <i>whole.</i>
neuter , -tra, -trum, <i>neither.</i>	ūllus , -a, -um, <i>any.</i>
nūllus , -a, -um, <i>not any, no.</i>	ūnus , -a, -um, <i>one, alone.</i>
uter , -tra, -trum, <i>which (of two)?</i>	

178. In the other cases of the singular and in the plural these words are declined¹ like **māgnus**, **līber** or **noster**, except **alius**, which is as follows:

¹ See Appendix (12).

M.	F.	N.
alius	alia	aliud
alius	alius	alius
aliī	aliī	aliī
alium	aliam	aliud
aliō	aliā	aliō

Decline *alter equus, neutra filia, tōtum flūmen, ūnus nauta.*

179.

VOCABULARY

familia, -ae, F., household, Dīvicō, -ōnis, M., a leader of retainers. the Helvetii.

iūdicium, -ī, N., judgment, ita, adv., so, thus. trial.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, (drive), do, act, plead, discuss.

cōgō (con + agō), cōgere, coēgi, coāctum, bring together, compel.

committō (con + mittō, 101), join (battle), commit, permit.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, conquer.

TRANSLATE

180. 1. Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī. 2. Habuistī, habuistis. 3. Mūnīvimus, mūnīvistis. 4. Pūgnāvit, pūgnāvērunt. 5. Ūnūs nāvis. 6. Alterum sīgnum. 7. Prōvinciae tōtī. 8. Coniūrātiō tōtīus Galliae. 9. Caesar ante oppidum castra posuit. 10. Helvētiī aliud cōnsilium habuērunt nūllum. 11. Dīvicō ita cum Caesare ēgit.¹ 12. Orgetorīx fuit prīnceps Helvētiōrum et cīvitātī persuāsit. 13. Orgetorīx ad iūdicium suam familiam coēgit. 14. Caesar proelium commisit. 15. Multī hominēs ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

¹ *plead.*

181. 1. We have seen, have given. 2. You have called, have persuaded. 3. They came, conquered. 4. For another boy. 5. With one soldier. 6. In the other part of the village. 7. The tribe will join battle with Orgetorix. 8. The chiefs brought together their retainers, a great number of men. 9. We have been soldiers. 10. There were many animals in the fields. 11. The enemy pitched the camp at night. 12. Neither horseman surpassed the footman in valor. 13. Orgetorix had a large household.

LESSON XXI

The Relative Pronoun *quī*.—Agreement of the Relative.—Sentences and Clauses.

182. DEFINITION.—A *relative* pronoun refers or relates to some preceding noun or pronoun called its *antecedent*. In Latin the relative pronoun is *quī*, *who*, *which* or *that*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	quī	quae	quod,	quī	quae	quae,
			<i>who, which or that.</i>			
G.	cūius	cūius	cūius,	quōrum	quārum	quōrum,
			<i>whose, of whom or of which.</i>			
D.	cui	cui	cui,	quibus	quibus	quibus,
			<i>to or for whom or which.</i>			
Ac.	quem	quam	quod,	quōs	quās	quae,
			<i>whom, which or that.</i>			
Ab.	quō	quā	quō,	quibus	quibus	quibus,
			<i>from (etc.) whom or which.</i>			

183.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Celtae, quī Gallī appellantur, ūnam partem incolunt:**
The Celts, who are called Gauls, inhabit one part.
2. **Germānī, quōrum rēx erat Ariovistus, trāns Rhēnum incolēbant:** *The Germans, whose king was Ariovistus, were living across the Rhine.*

In these sentences notice that **quī** and **quōrum** are of the same gender, number and person as the antecedents **Celtae** and **Germānī**. **Quī** is in the nominative case not because **Celtae** is, but because it is the subject of **appellantur**.

184. RULE XV.—A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and person, but its case depends on the structure of the clause in which it stands.

185. SENTENCES.—With regard to form, sentences may be *simple*, *complex* or *compound*, as in English.

The above model sentences are *complex*, for they consist each of two clauses, a principal or independent, and a subordinate or dependent. The clauses of a complex sentence may be connected by a relative pronoun, a relative adjective or a subordinate conjunction.

186. CLAUSES.—Clauses may be used as nouns, adjectives or adverbs.

(a) A *noun-clause*, or substantive clause, is one that is used as a noun, being the subject of a verb, object of a verb, in apposition with a noun or pronoun, etc.

(b) An *adjective-clause* is one that modifies a noun or pronoun. The relative clauses in 183 are illustrations.

(c) An *adverb-clause* is one that modifies a verb, adjective or other adverb. Noun-clauses and adverb-clauses will be illustrated later.

187.

VOCABULARY

obaerātus, -ī, M., <i>debtor.</i>	nātiō, -ōnis, F., <i>race, nation.</i>
iter, itineris, N., <i>journey,</i> <i>march, road.</i>	novus, -a, -um, <i>new.</i>
lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., <i>embassy.</i>	quī, quae, quod, <i>who, which</i> <i>or that.</i>

condūcō (con + dūcō, 83), *bring together.*

cōnscribō (con + scribō, *write*), -scribere, -scripsī,
-scriptum, *enroll, enlist.*

NOTE.—Iter is declined thus: iter, itineris, itinerī, iter, itinere; pl. itinera, etc.

TRANSLATE

188. 1. Oppidum quod mūnītur. 2. Eques cui sīgnum dant. 3. Eques cui persuāsī. 4. Nāvēs quae sunt Caesarī. 5. Itinera quae vīdistis. 6. Mīlitēs quibus auxilium dabitur. 7. Rēx quem vīdistī. 8. Belgae quōs laudābāmus. 9. Nauta cūius nāvis est in¹ marī. 10. Puerī quōrum pater erit dux. 11. Prōvincia quam incolimus. 12. Mīlitēs quibus persuāsīmus. 13. Tuba quā sīgnum datur. 14. Nātiōnēs quibuscum² contendunt. 15. Erant duo itinera ex Helvētiā. 16. Orgetorīx suōs obaerātōs, quōrum māgnūm numerū habēbat, condūxit. 17. Duae legiōnēs, quās Caesar in Galliā cōnscribit, ad oppidum mittentur. 18. In itinere persuādet Casticō, cūius pater rēx in Sēquanīs fuerat.³ 19. Helvētīi lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, cūius legātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux fuerat.³

¹ on. ² With the ablative of the relative pronoun, the preposition **cum** may be attached as an enclitic (7, c). ³ *had been.*

189. 1. The hostage whose brother will come. 2. For the boy whom they praise. 3. The towns which are fortified. 4. The sailors whose ship is new. 5. The man with¹ whom we came. 6. Into the forests which we see. 7. Across the river which is deep. 8. The traders whom you will not persuade. 9. The enemy hold the mountain which you see near the river. 10. There were many new ships that carried the soldiers. 11. We are defended by a great number of the soldiers whom you praise.

LESSON XXII

The Demonstrative Pronouns *is* and *īdem*.

190. DEFINITION.—A *demonstrative* pronoun points out the noun or pronoun to which it refers. One of the demonstratives is *is, ea, id, that, he, she* or *it*. Another is *īdem* (*is + dem*), *eadem, idem, the same*. Learn the declension of these two words as given in the Appendix, section 19.

191. USES OF *is*.—(a) There is no special pronoun of the third person, but *is* may be used as such: *Lēgātī ad eum veniunt: Ambassadors come to him.*

(b) When used as personal pronouns, the forms of *is* do not refer to the subject of the sentence, but to some other person or thing: *Princeps ēius amicum vīdit: The chief saw his (some other person's) friend.* *Suus* (87) is used in referring to the subject: *Princeps suum amicum vīdit: The chief saw his own friend.*

(c) Demonstrative pronouns when used as adjectives

¹ See note 2, page 61.

agree in gender, number and case with the noun they modify: **id flūmen, idem vīcus, ea legiō.**

(d) **Is** (or **idem**) is often used as the antecedent, or in agreement with the antecedent, of a relative pronoun: **Eī quī castra dēfendunt:** *Those who defend the camp.* **Ea legiō quae est in castris:** *That legion which is in the camp.*

192. VOCABULARY

mors, mortis, F., *death.*

is, ea, id, *that, he, etc.*

idem, eadem, idem, *the same.*

ob, prep. with acc., (*against*), *on account of, for.*

respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *reply, answer.*

Decline **id flūmen, ea legiō, idem puer.**

TRANSLATE

193. 1. Per eōs. 2. Cum eīs, ab eīs. 3. Ob eam causam, ob eās causās. 4. In eō itinere. 5. Is pāgus. 6. Eōdem tempore. 7. Māgna eōrum pars. 8. In eam partēm. 9. Eādem tubā. 10. Eadem oppida. 11. Eōrum itinerum. 12. Eaedem lēgātiōnēs. 13. Eārundem legiōnum. 14. Idem¹ Caesar audit. 15. Īdem Dīviciācus Haeduus respondet. 16. Eādem legiōne quam habēbat. 17. Is bellum gessit. 18. Orgetorīx id² eīs³ pērsuāsīt. 19. Orgetorīx eī suam filiam dat. 20. Post ēius mortem Helvētīi convēnērunt. 21. Ab eisdem nostra cōsilia ēnūntiantur. 22. Caesar eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant,⁴ ad eōs contendit. 23. Germānī sunt eīdem quibuscum Helvētīi contendērunt.

¹ Notice that **i** is short in the neuter of **idem**, but long in the masculine.

² Direct object of **pērsuāsīt**; translate *of this*. ³ How is **eīs** related to **pērsuāsīt**? ⁴ *had gone*.

194. 1. Of that number. 2. For that nation. 3. By those nations. 4. Across those rivers. 5. Out of those fields. 6. The same conspiracy. 7. Of those tribes. 8. Of the same laws. 9. To the same man. 10. That road is long. 11. That boy, whom we saw in the forest, is the son of the chief. 12. The Helvetians fortified their (own) towns. 13. The Helvetians were devastating their (the Haeduan's) fields. 14. Caesar will enroll a new legion, which he will lead into Gaul.

LESSON XXIII

The Present Subjunctive (of Conj. I and *sum*).—The Subjunctive of Purpose.

195. FORMATION OF THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.—The subjunctive mood has four tenses: the *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect* and *pluperfect*. In the first conjugation the present is formed by adding the personal endings to the present stem with its final *-ā-* changed to *-e-* (*-ē-*): active, *laude-m*: passive, *laude-r*.

196.

MODEL VERB

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (CONJUGATION I).

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
laudem	laudēmus	lauder	laudēmur
laudēs	laudētis	laudēris (-re)	laudēmini
laudet	laudent	laudētur	laudentur

Conjugate the present subjunctive of *appellō* and *dō*.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *sum*.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

197. USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—The subjunctive is used to express action (1) as willed: *laudēmus*, *let us praise*; (2) as desired: *laudēmur*, *may we be praised*; (3) as possible: *laudētur*, *he may be praised*. No one meaning can be given for subjunctive forms. In independent clauses or sentences, the present may be translated as in the illustrations just given; in dependent clauses, by *may*, *should*, *would* or as explained in 198 and elsewhere.

198. MODEL SENTENCES

- 1. Caesar venit (veniet) ut milītēs laudet:** *Caesar is coming (will come) to praise (that he may praise) the soldiers.*
- 2. Caesar mittit (mittet) legiōnem quae (= ut ea) agrōs vāstet:** *Caesar sends (will send) a legion to devastate the fields.*
- 3. Milītēs pūgnant (pūgnābunt) nē oppidum expūgnētur:** *The soldiers fight (will fight) that the town may not be taken.*
- 4. Bellum gerēmus nē sit rēx:** *We shall wage war that he may not be king.*

(a) Sentence 1. For what purpose does Caesar come? In English we may answer *to praise*, *that he may praise*, *for the purpose of praising*. In Latin prose the answer is not expressed by the infinitive, as may be done in English (*to praise*), but often by a clause beginning with *ut*,

etc., and having its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is called a *purpose clause* or a *final clause*.

(b) Sentence 2. Instead of **ut**, **quī** may be used when there is an antecedent. **Quī** then is equivalent to **ut** + a demonstrative (**is**, **ea**, **id**).

(c) Sentences 3 and 4. To express negative purpose (*that—not*), **nē** is used.

Note.—These clauses are all adverbial (186, c).

199. RULE XVI.—*The subjunctive mood is used to express purpose with ut, nē, or a relative.*

200.

VOCABULARY

ut (**utī**), conj., *that, in order that, as.*

nē, conj., (*lest*), *that—not.*

oppūgnō (**ob** + **pūgnō**, 58), *fight against, attack.*

TRANSLATE

201. 1. Mittitur ut sit imperātor. **2.** Mittimur ut pācem cōfirmēmus. **3.** Cōsulēs nōn mittuntur ut obsidēs dent. **4.** Cōscribiminī ut in prōvinciā pūgnētis. **5.** Rōmānī in Helvētiam venient ut eam partem Galliae pācent. **6.** Imperātor milītēs convocat ut nova sīgna eīs det. **7.** Rauracī sua oppida incendunt, nē ab hostibus oppūgnentur. **8.** Tum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra oppūgnet, mittit. **9.** Eōdem tempore mercātōrēs ad eōs commeābant. **10.** Eaedem cīvitatēs Germānōs virtūte praecedent.

202. 1. I shall come to announce the victory. **2.** He will come to announce the victory. **3.** We shall come to spend-the-winter.¹ **4.** We shall send men to carry the

¹ hiemō.

grain. 5. They are fortifying the towns that they may not be in great peril. 6. The king will send a messenger that you may be recalled. 7. You are sent by the consul to attack the villages by night.

LESSON XXIV

The Present Subjunctive (Conj. II-IV).—Noun-clauses with *ut* and *nē*.

203. In the second and fourth conjugations the letter *-a-* (*-ā-*) is added to the present stem before the personal ending: *mone-a-m*, *mone-a-r*; *audi-a-m*, *audi-a-r*. In the third conjugation the final *-e-* of the stem is changed to *-a-* (*-ā-*) before the personal ending: *rega-m*, *rega-r*.

204.

MODEL VERBS

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (CONJUGATIONS II-IV).

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>moneam</i>	<i>moneāmus</i>	<i>monear</i>	<i>moneāmur</i>
<i>moneās</i>	<i>moneātis</i>	<i>moneāris (-re)</i>	<i>moneāmini</i>
<i>moneat</i>	<i>moneant</i>	<i>moneātur</i>	<i>moneantur</i>
<i>regam</i>	<i>regāmus</i>	<i>regar</i>	<i>regāmur</i>
<i>regās</i>	<i>regātis</i>	<i>regāris (-re)</i>	<i>regāmini</i>
<i>regat</i>	<i>regant</i>	<i>regātur</i>	<i>regantur</i>
<i>audiam</i>	<i>audiāmus</i>	<i>audiar</i>	<i>audiāmur</i>
<i>audiās</i>	<i>audiātis</i>	<i>audiāris (-re)</i>	<i>audiāmini</i>
<i>audiat</i>	<i>audiant</i>	<i>audiātur</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

Conjugate the present subjunctive of *videō*, *dūcō* and *mūniō*.

205.

VOCABULARY

- iniūria, -ae, F., *injustice, injury, wrong.* nōbilitās, -tātis, F., *nobility, the nobles.*
 maleficium, -ī, N., *harm.* Catamantāloedēs, -is, M., *a chief of the Sequani.*
 rēgnum, -ī, N. (rēx), *royal power, kingdom.* -que, conj., *and.*
 sēmentis, -is, F., *sowing.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize.*

prohibeō (prō + habeō), -ēre, -uī, -itum, *keep off, hinder.*

timeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear.*

exūrō (ex + ūrō), -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn up.*

206.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. Casticō, ut rēgnum occupet, persuādet: *He persuades Casticus to seize the royal power.*
2. Casticō, ut rēgnum occupet, persuādētur: *Casticus is persuaded (literally, it is persuaded to Casticus) to seize the royal power.*
3. Timeō nē sit rēx: *I fear that he will be king.*
4. Timeō ut sit rēx: *I fear that he will not be king.*

(a) A clause beginning with *ut* or *nē* and having its verb in the subjunctive may be the object of verbs meaning *advise, command, induce, permit, persuade*, etc. See sentence 1.

(b) If these verbs are in the passive, the clause becomes the subject, and the noun which we should expect to be the subject becomes the indirect object, as in sentence 2.

¹ Except *iubeō*; see 233.

(c) Verbs meaning *fear* are followed by object-clauses with **ut** or **nē**, but **nē** means *lest*, or *that*, while **ut** means *that not*.

TRANSLATE

207. 1. Moneteum nē proelium committat. 2. Timet nē Caesar eōs vincat. 3. Timet ut Caesar eōs vincat. 4. Militēs pūgnant nē collis ab hostibus teneātur. 5. Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, persuādētur ut in Galliam veniant. 6. Orgetorīx coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis facit¹ et cīvitatī persuādet, ut dē finibus suās cōpiās ēdūcant.² 7. Helvētiī sēmentēs māgnās faciunt³ ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppetat. 8. In itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupet. 9. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, ut oppida sua vīcōsque⁴ exūrant. 10. Dumnorix Sēquanōs monet, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiōs, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā finēs Sēquanōrum trānseant.⁵

208. 1. The traders come to see the camp, which extends from the river to the mountain. 2. The nobles⁶ will wage war in order that Gaul may be free. 3. We fear that our friends will not hear. 4. We fear that the nobles⁶ will seize the royal power. 5. I shall persuade Piso and Galba to defend the camp. 6. Piso and Galba will be persuaded to defend the camp. 7. Many horsemen will be sent to keep off the enemy.

¹ *is making.*

² *are making.*

³ Plural, because **cīvitatī** is a collective noun.

⁴ **que** is an enclitic (7, c) and is attached to the second of the two words which it connects. It must therefore be translated *before* the word to which it is attached: **gladius pīlumque**, *the sword and the javelin.*

⁵ *pass through.*

⁶ Use a singular noun.

LESSON XXV

Adjectives of the Third Declension.—The Genitive with Adjectives.

209. NOMINATIVE SINGULAR.—A few adjectives of the third declension have a different form for each gender in the nominative singular, and are called *adjectives of three endings*: **ācer, ācris, ācre**. Many have one form for the masculine and feminine, and another for the neuter. These are called *adjectives of two endings*: **fortis, forte**. Some have the same form for all genders, and are called *adjectives of one ending*: **potēns**.

210. ENDINGS.—Most adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives, have **-ī** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, **-īs (-ēs)** in the accusative masculine and feminine plural, and **-ia** in the nominative and accusative neuter plural.

Learn from the Appendix (13), the declension of the following model adjectives:

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, active. Base: **ācr-**.
fortis, forte, brave. Base: **fort-**.
potēns, powerful. Base: **potent-**.
vēlōx, swift. Base: **vēlōc-**.

211.

VOCABULARY

praeda , -ae, f., booty, plunder.	equester , -tris, -tre (equus), of the cavalry.
īnstitūtum , -ī, n., custom.	facilis , -e, easy.
supplicium , -ī, n., punishment.	difficilis , -e, difficult.
	gravis , -e, heavy, severe.

cupidus, -a, -um, eager, desirous. **omnis, -e, all, every.**

recēns, -entis, new, late, recent.

dēpōnō (dē + pōnō, 166), lay down, deposit; with memoriam, blot out.

212.

MODEL SENTENCE

Orgetorix erat cupidus rēgnī: *Orgetorix was desirous of royal power.*

In this sentence **rēgnī**, a noun in the genitive, completes the meaning of the adjective **cupidus**.

213. RULE XVII.—*The genitive is used to complete the meaning of many adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, fullness, power and their opposites.*

TRANSLATE

214. 1. Facile iter. **2.** Facili itinere. **3.** Potēns nātiō.
4. Per potentēs nātiōnēs. **5.** Ab fortī puerō. **6.** Ab fortibus pueris.
7. Recēns victōria. **8.** Recēns proelium.
9. Ante recentem victōriam. **10.** Gravēs gladii. **11.** Omne frūmentum.
12. Omnia sua oppida. **13.** Eōrum omnium.
14. Cum omnibus cōpiis. **15.** Gallia omnis. **16.** Galli omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus differunt.¹ **17.** Militēs erant peritī bellī.
18. Praeda erit fortibus viris.²
19. Legiō fuit cupida praedae. **20.** Peditēs erant vëlōcēs et fortēs.
21. Iter per Sēquanōs erat angustum et difficile: iter per prōvinciam nostram, facile.
22. Ariovistus dē³ omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sunt, grave supplicium sūmit.⁴
23. Rōmānī cum Germānis equestri proeliō contendēbant.
24. Caesar recentium iniūriarum memoriam

¹ differ.² See 115.³ upon.⁴ inflicts.

nōn dēpōnet. 25. Casticus rēgnum occupābit ut cīvītās sit potēns. 26. Timēmus nē perīculum sit māgnū.

215. 1. Among the swift horses. 2. With the brave horsemen. 3. Many cavalry battles. 4. The men have been brave. 5. The boy was carrying a heavy sword. 6. The boy had¹ a heavy sword. 7. We are all desirous of victory. 8. The mountain will be held by the active troops, for² they are skilled in warfare.² 9. I fear that the journey is difficult. 10. Orgetorix will persuade the same neighbors to fortify their winter-quarters.

LESSON XXVI—REVIEW

CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPTER I (BEGUN)

216. 1. What are the personal endings of the perfect indicative active? 2. How is the perfect indicative active formed? 3. The present subjunctive? 4. Give the nine adjectives whose genitive singular ends in **-ius**. 5. Decline **quī, is, idem, tōtus** and the model adjectives of Declension III. 6. Conjugate the present subjunctive of the model verbs. 7. How does the relative pronoun agree with its antecedent? 8. After what adjectives is the genitive case used? 9. How is purpose expressed in Latin? 10. Give a classification of clauses. 11. State one use of the noun-clause.

217.

Review Vocabulary

familia	sēmentis	difficilis	-que
iniūria	alius	fortis	occupō
praeda	alter	gravis	oppūgnō

¹ See 115.

² bellum

³ quod

obaerātus	neuter	omnis	prohibeō
īnstitūtum	nūllus	potēns	respondeō
iūdicium	sōlus	recēns	timeō
maleficium	tōtus	vēlōx	agō
rēgnum	ūllus	is	cōgō
supplicium	uter	īdem	committō
mors	cupidus	quī	condūcō
lēgātiō	novus	ita	cōnscrībō
nātiō	ācer	ob	dēpōnō
iter	equester	ut (utī)	exūrō
nōbilitās	facilis	nē	vincō

218.

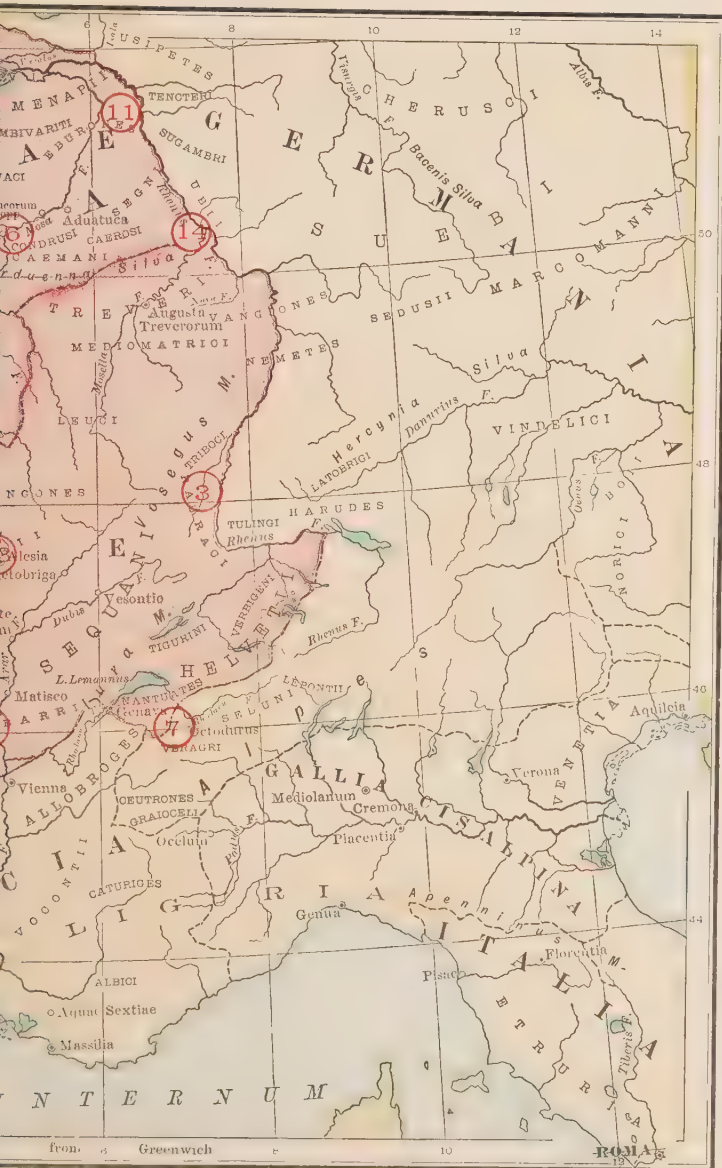
Review Sentences

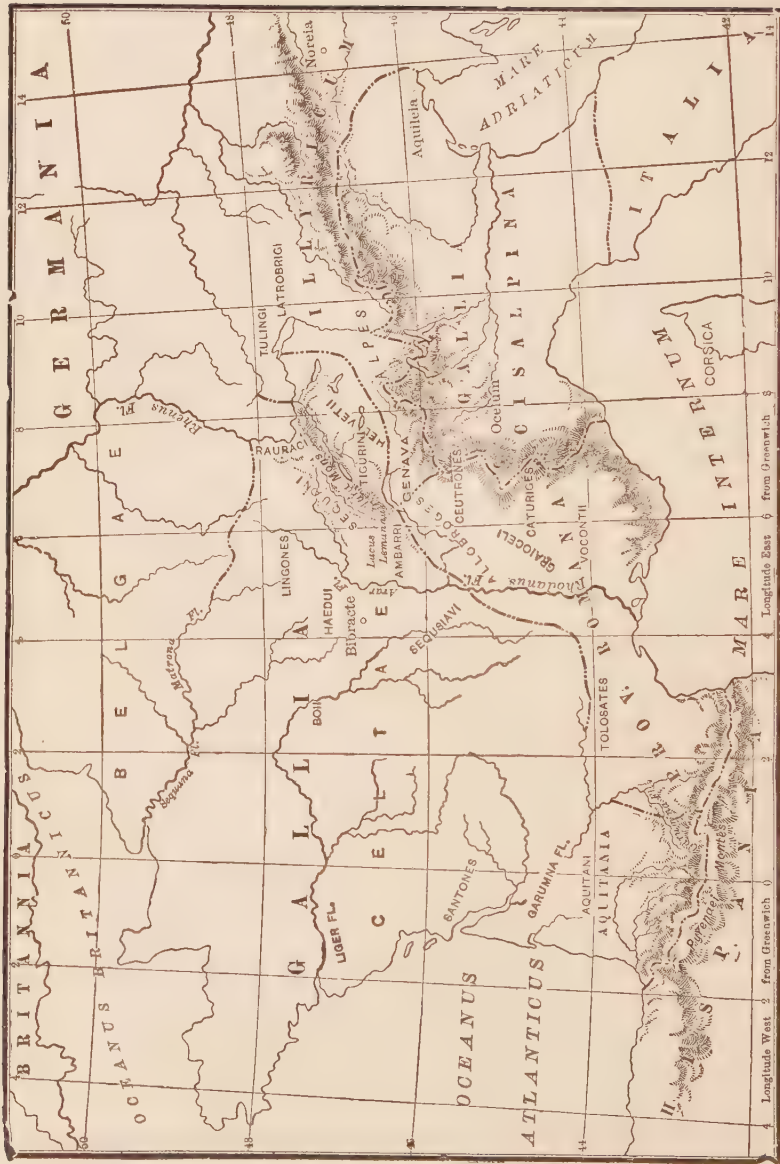
1. In itinere persuādet Casticō, cūius pater rēx in Sēquanīs fuerat. 2. Orgetorīx obaerātōs suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, condūxit. 3. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. 4. Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis facit et cīvitātī persuādet, ut dē finibus suās cōpiās ēdūcant. 5. Helvētiī sēmentēs māgnās faciunt, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppetat. 6. In itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupet. 7. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs, finitimīs, ut oppida sua vīcōsque exūrant. 8. Sēquanī obsidēs dant, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā finēs Sēquanōrum trānseant. 9. Tum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra oppūgnet, mittit. 10. Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam coēgit. 11. Orgetorīx id eīs persuāsit. 12. Iter per Sēquanōs erat angustum et difficile; iter per prōvinciam, facile. 13. Caesar recentium iniūriārum memoriā nōn dēpōnet.

219. HISTORICAL NOTE.—Gaius Julius Caesar, the Roman general, statesman and writer, was born

1. Helvetii, 58
2. Helvetii, 58
3. Ariovistus, 58
4. Belgae, 57
5. Nervii, 57
6. Aduatuci, 57
7. Veragri, 56
8. Veneti, 56
9. Venelli, 56
10. Sotiates, 56 (B.C.)
11. Germans, 55
12. Britons, 55
13. Vercingetorix, 52
14. Location of Bridge, 55







100 B.C. After an education in Rome and Greece, and a short career in the army, he held several important political offices, the last of which was the consulship for the year 59 B.C. At the close of this year he became governor of Gaul, or ancient France. During the following eight years (58-51) he subdued the tribes of Gaul and also invaded Germany and Britain. The history of these years is contained in eight books, called Commentaries on the Gallic Wars, seven of which were written by himself. The first book begins with a chapter on the geography and people of Gaul, a portion of which is given below.

220. CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, I. I (BEGUN): THE DIVISIONS OF GAUL.

Gallia est omnis dīvisā in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam¹ incolunt Belgae, aliam¹ Aquitānī, tertiam¹ quī ipsōrum² linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī³ omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē⁴ differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sē-
5 quana dividit.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ ūnam, aliam and tertiam agree with partem, which is implied.

² ipsōrum, *their own*, gen. pl. of ipse (257); modifies linguā.

³ Hī, *these*, nom. pl. of hīc (255); subject of differunt.

⁴ sē, *themselves*, acc. pl. (350); inter sē, *from one another*.

LESSON XXVII

The Imperfect Subjunctive (Conj. I-IV).—The Imperfect Subjunctive in Clauses of Purpose, etc.

221. FORMATION OF THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—The imperfect subjunctive is formed by adding the per-

sonal endings to the present active infinitive.¹ This tense may be translated by *might*, *would*, etc., or as explained in 224 and elsewhere.

222.

MODEL VERBS

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
laudārem	laudārēmus	laudārer	laudārēmur
laudārēs	laudārētis	laudārēris (-re)	laudārēmini
laudāret	laudārent	laudārētur	laudārentur
monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur
regerem	regerēmus	regerer	regerēmur
regerēs	regerētis	regerēris (-re)	regerēmini
regeret	regerent	regerētur	regerentur
audīrem	audīrēmus	audīrer	audīrēmur
audīrēs	audīrētis	audīrēris (-re)	audīrēmini
audīret	audīrent	audīrētur	audīrentur

223. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *sum*.*Singular.*

essem

essēs

esset

Plural.

essēmus

essētis

essent

Conjugate the imperfect subjunctive of *dō*, *pūgnō*, *teneō*, *mittō*, *mūniō*.

¹ Or, in regular verbs, by adding the tense-sign *-re-* and the personal endings to the present stem.

224.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Mīlitēs pūgnābant** (or **pūgnāvērunt**) **ut castra dēfenderent**: *The soldiers were fighting (or fought) to defend (that they might defend) the camp.*
2. **Persuāsit eīs ut venīrent**: *He persuaded them to come.*
3. **Timuit nē vincerentur**: *He feared that they might be conquered.*

In 1 the subordinate clause is adverbial and expresses purpose; in 2 and 3 it is used as a noun (or substantive).

Notice that the subordinate verbs are in the imperfect tense. The *imperfect* tense is used in such clauses when the verb in the principal clause is in a *past* tense. Compare these sentences with those of 198, in which there is a *present* verb in the subordinate clause when there is a *present* or *future* verb in the principal clause.

225.

VOCABULARY

mūnitiō -ōnis, F. (**mūniō**), **turpitūdō, -inis**, F., *disgrace*.
fortification. **nōnnūllī, -ōrum**, M., *some*.
suspīciō, -ōnis, F., *suspicion*. **quālis, -e**, adj., *of what sort?*
timor, timōris, M., *fear.* *what?*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *obtain* (a request).

supportō (sub + **portō**, 38), *bring up, supply*.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *escape, avoid*.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *blot out*.

remaneō (re + **maneō**), **manēre, -mānsī, -māsum**,
remain.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *frighten, alarm*.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *learn, ascertain*.

interclūdō (inter + **claudō**), **-clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum**,
cut off.

TRANSLATE

226. 1. Explōrātor lēgātum monuit nē remanēret. 2. Eī Gallis persuāsērunt ut oppida sua incenderent. 3. Nōn-nūllī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. 4. Lē-gātōs ad Dumnorīgem mīsērunt, ut ā Sēquanīs impe-trārent. 5. Ariovistus prope Caesarem castra posuit, ut frūmentō,¹ quod ex Haeduīs supportārētur,² eum inter-clūderet. 6. Caesar explōrātōrēs mīsīt, quī³ cōgnōscerent quālis esset² nātūra montis. 7. Equitēs, ut turpitūdi-nem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnāvērunt. 8. Ariovistus cōpiās mīsīt, quae³ nostrōs terrērent et mū-nītiōne prohibērent. 9. Vītāvimus gravia pīla quae ā pe-ditibus mittēbantur.⁴ 10. Quattuor hōrīs ^{2 1/2 hours} omnia hostium cōnsilia cōgnōscēs.

227. 1. He persuaded the men to be brave. 2. Some feared that grain might not be supplied. 3. To escape the javelins, the trader remained on⁵ the hill. 4. We were devastating the fields to terrify the enemy. 5. We shall remain in⁵ the village, that we may learn the number of hostages. 6. The Gauls were fortifying the town, that it might not be in peril. 7. The same chief will blot out the tribe's disgrace.

LESSON XXVIII

**The Present Infinitive.—The Uses of the Infinitive.—
The Subject of the Infinitive.**

228. THE INFINITIVE.—The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a noun it may have the uses of the nomina-

¹ *from the grain.* ² To be translated like the imperfect indicative. This verb does not express purpose; it is in the subjunctive by dependence on *interclūderet*. ³ See 199. ⁴ *hurled.* ⁵ Use Latin preposition *in*.

tive and accusative. As a verb it has voice, tense, may have a subject or object, and may be modified by an adverb.

The infinitive has three tenses in each voice: the present, the perfect and the future. The present active infinitive has already been mentioned as the second of the principal parts of the verb (17, 36, etc.).

The present passive infinitive is formed by changing the final **-e** of the active to **-ī**, except in the third conjugation, in which final **-ere** becomes **-ī**.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
laudāre, <i>to praise.</i>	laudārī, <i>to be praised.</i>
monēre, <i>to advise.</i>	monērī, <i>to be advised.</i>
regere, <i>to rule.</i>	regī, <i>to be ruled.</i>
audire, <i>to hear.</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard.</i>
esse, <i>to be.</i>	

What are the present passive infinitives of **dō**, **mittō**, **mūniō**, **pōnō**, **prohibeō**, **vāstō**?

229.

VOCABULARY

castellum, **-ī**, N., *fort, redoubt.*

comportō (con + portō, 38), *bring together, collect.*

obtimeō (ob + teneō), **-tinēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentum**, *hold, occupy.*

ascendō, **-ere**, **-ī**, **ascēsum**, *climb, ascend.*

cōstituō, **-stituere**, **-stituī**, **-stitūtum**, *put, station, decide, appoint.*

dīcō, **dīcere**, **dixī**, **dictum**, *say.*

commūniō (con + mūniō, 70), *strongly fortify.*

230. USES OF THE INFINITIVE.—The infinitive is used chiefly as follows:

I. Without a subject—

1. As the subject of a finite verb (especially **est** or an impersonal verb, 428): **Expūgnāre oppidum est facile:** *To capture the town is easy.*

2. As an object or complement: **Helvētii pācem cōnfirmāre cōstituunt:** *The Helvetians decide to establish peace.*

In the latter use the infinitive completes the meaning of certain verbs which imply another action of the same subject. Thus, in the last example, the *establishing* as well as the *deciding* is done by the Helvetians. This is called the *complementary* infinitive, and is used in connection with verbs meaning *can, wish, dare, resolve, begin, ought, seem, hasten, hesitate*, etc.

231. II. With a subject-accusative—

1. As the subject of a finite verb: **Dīcitur collem esse altum:** *It is said that the hill is high.*

2. As an object or complement: (a) **Oppidum expūgnārī dīcunt:** *They say that the town is captured.* (b) **Agrum esse māgnū vidēmus:** *We see that the field is large.*

In the last three examples, **collem**, **oppidum** and **agrum** are the subjects of the infinitives; the “infinitive clause” **collem esse altum** is the subject of **dīcitur**; **oppidum expūgnārī** is the object of **dīcunt**; and **agrum esse māgnū** is the object of **vidēmus**. In such examples the infinitive represents the indicative in Latin and is translated by that mood in English.

NOTE.—The infinitive with or without a subject-accu-

ative may also be used in apposition with another word, or as a predicate nominative.

232. III. With a subject-nominative—

The infinitive is sometimes used with the meaning of the imperfect indicative. It then has its subject in the nominative case, as **dīcere** in the following: **Haedui frūmentum comportārī dīcere**: *The Haedui kept saying that the grain was being collected.*

This is called the *historical infinitive*.

233. RULE XVIII.—*The subject of the infinitive (except the historical infinitive) is in the accusative case.*

RULE XIX.—*The infinitive with subject-accusative is used with verbs meaning say, know, think, perceive, etc.; also with iubeō, command, vetō, forbid, prohibeō, prevent, sinō, allow, cōgō, compel, cupiō, desire, volō, wish, etc.*

TRANSLATE

234. 1. Frūmentum comportārī dīcunt. 2. Nostra cōnsilia hostibus ēnūtiārī dīcit. 3. Dumnorix māgnū numerum mīlitum habēre dīcitur. 4. Obsidēs nōn dare cōstitui-mus. 5. Dīviciācum vocārī iubet. 6. Caesar Labiēnum montem ascendere iubet. 7. Cōnsidius dīcit montem, quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit,¹ ab hosti-bus tenērī. 8. Helvētiōs angustōs finēs habēre dīxērunt. 9. Eīs² Helvētiī persuādere nōn poterant.³ 10. Caesar ca-stella commūnit, ut Helvētiōs prohibēre possit.⁴ 11. Ūna pars, quam⁵ Gallōs⁵ obtinēre dīcitur, ā flūmine Rhodanō pertinet. 12. Orgetorīgem causam dīcere⁶ coēgērunt.

¹ wished. ² Why is eīs in the dative? ³ were able. ⁴ may be able.

⁵ quam is the object of obtinēre, Gallōs the subject. ⁶ plead.

235. 1. Our plan is to establish friendship. 2. We report (that) the redoubt is strongly fortified. 3. The road is said to be broad. 4. It is said (that) the town is defended. 5. We learn (that) the Haedui are bringing grain to the camp. 6. Caesar ordered the camp to be pitched. 7. I have decided to see the fort.

LESSON XXIX

The Present Participle.—The Gerund.—The Gerundive.—The Present System.

236. PARTICIPLES.—There are four participles, two in the active voice (the *present* and the *future*) and two in the passive (the *perfect* and the *future*, or *gerundive*).

The present participle may be translated by the English present active participle. It is formed by adding **-ns** (**-ēns** in the fourth conjugation) to the present stem: **laudāns**, *praising*; **monēns**, *advising*; **regēns**, *ruling*; **audiēns**, *hearing*.

237. The present participle is declined like **potēns** (210). In the ablative singular the ending is **-e**, but when the participle is used simply as an adjective, it is **-ī**.

238. The participle is a verbal *adjective*. Like an adjective, it agrees with a noun or pronoun in gender, number and case. Like a verb, it may take an object and be modified by an adverb: **Militēs collem celeriter ascendentes vidimus**: *We saw the soldiers quickly climbing the hill*.

239. THE GERUND.—The gerund is a neuter verbal

noun, equivalent in meaning to an English verbal noun in *-ing*: **cupidus videndī**, *desirous of seeing*. It is found in the genitive, dative, accusative and ablative singular, the present infinitive being used for the nominative.

The gerund is formed by adding to the present stem **-nd-** (**-end-** in the fourth conjugation) and the endings of the second declension: **laudandī**, **monendī**, **regendī**, **audiendī**.

GEN. **laudandī**, *of praising*.

DAT. **laudandō**, *to or for praising*.

ACC. **laudandum**, *praising* (used chiefly with **ad**).

ABL. **laudandō**, *with or by praising*.

240. MODELS OF THE GERUND

1. **Homō cupidus regendī**, *a man desirous of ruling (or eager to rule)*.
2. **Pūgnandī causā**,¹ *for-the-purpose of fighting*.
3. **Ad oppūgnandum**, *for attacking, to attack*.
4. **Caesar in quaerendō**² **reperiēbat**³: *Caesar found upon inquiring*.

NOTE.—The gerund seldom takes an object, the gerundive construction being used instead. See 242.

241. THE GERUNDIVE.—The gerundive is a verbal adjective, declined in both numbers like **māgnus**. It is formed by adding **-ndus** (**-endus** in the fourth conjugation) to the present stem: **laudandus**, **monendus**, **regendus**, **audiendus**.

The gerundive may be translated in different ways. Thus, **laudandus** may mean *to be praised, deserving to be*

¹ The ablative **causā** follows a genitive and means *for the purpose, for the sake*.

² **quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *search for, inquire*.

³ **reperiō**, **reperire**, **repperī**, **reperitum**, *find, discover, learn*.

praised, but when used as an attributive adjective it is rendered, like the gerund, by an English verbal in *-ing*, as in the following models.

242. MODELS OF THE GERUNDIVE

1. **Cupidus amicōrum laudandōrum**, *desirous of praising friends (of friends to-be-praised).*
2. **Pācis petendae causā**, } *for the purpose of seeking peace*
3. **Ad pācem petendam**, } *(for peace to be sought).*
4. **Expūgnandō oppidō**, *by capturing the town.*

Notice that the nouns in these models are translated as the objects of the gerundives, though the gerundives have the adjective agreement with the nouns. Another way of expressing model 1 is **cupidus amīcōs laudandī**, in which **laudandī** is a gerund having **amīcōs** as its object. This construction, however, is seldom used.

243. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE COMPARED.—The gerund is a verbal noun, found only in the singular neuter, and belongs to the active voice; the gerundive is a verbal adjective, found in both numbers and all genders, and belongs to the passive voice.

The beginner will have no difficulty in distinguishing the singular of the gerundive from the gerund, if he applies this test: *the gerundive agrees with a noun or pronoun; the gerund is used as a noun.*

244.

VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, M., <i>mind, spirit.</i>	tēlum, -ī, N., <i>javelin, spear.</i>
cupiditās, -tātis, F., <i>desire.</i>	parātus, -a, -um, <i>ready, pre-</i>
facultās, -tātis, F., <i>ease, op-</i>	<i>pared.</i>
<i>portunity, means.</i>	sīc, adv., <i>so.</i>

coniūrō (con + iūrō, *swear*), āre, -āvi, -ātum, *conspire*.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *deliberate*.

dēspērō (dē + spērō, *hope*), -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *despair*.

effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *weaken, enfeeble*.

fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, *weep*.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, assume*.

What are the present participle, gerund and gerundive of effēminō, obtineō, sūmō and mūniō?

245. ABSTRACT NOUNS.—Many abstract nouns—that is, nouns denoting a quality—are derived from adjectives. Some abstract nouns have the suffix **-tās**: facultās, *ease*, from facilis, *easy*; cupiditās, *desire*, from cupidus, *desirous*. Other illustrations are hūmāni-tās (hūmānus, *homō*), nōbili-tās (nōbilis), alti-tūdō (altus), multi-tūdō (multus), amīci-tia (amīcus, *friendly*).

TRANSLATE

246. 1. Militēs dēspērantēs dē pūgnā. 2. Caesarī petentī. 3. Dīviciācus flēns auxilium ā Caesare petit. 4. Helvētiī flentēs pācem petēbant. 5. Helvētiī in nostrōs venientēs tēla mittēbant. 6. Pūgnandī tempus. 7. Hiemandī causā. 8. Vītandae suspīciōnis causā. 9. Ad effēminandōs animōs. 10. Cupidus bellī gerendī. 11. Cupiditās rēgnī obtinendī. 12. Caesar diem¹ ad dēliberandum sūmit. 13. Caesar cōgnōscit multās esse causās coniūrandī. 14. Decima legiō est parāta ad bellum gerendum. 15. Oppidum nātūrā sīc mūniēbatur, ut ad dūcendum² bellum daret³ facultātem.

247. 1. The boys⁴ coming to the village. 2. The men seeing the standard. 3. The river⁴ flowing into the sea.

¹ a day.
to be translated, like the indicative.

² prolonging.

³ A subjunctive of *resuli* (399)

⁴ Use nominative case.

4. Desirous of hearing. 5. The desire to see¹ the mountain. 6. For the purpose of praising. 7. For the purpose of carrying grain. 8. By giving grain. 9. Ready to give² hostages. 10. Ready to move the camp. 11. Ready to defend the town. 12. They say that the javelins are long and heavy.

248. THE PRESENT SYSTEM.—With the exception of the imperative, all the forms of the verb that are derived from the *present stem* have been given in the preceding chapters. Taken together, these forms constitute the *present system*. For **laudō** they are:

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
<i>Pres.</i> laud-ō	laude-m	laudā-re	laudā-ns	lauda-ndī
<i>Impf.</i> laudā-bam	laudā-rem			
<i>Fut.</i> laudā-bō				

PASSIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> laudo-r	laude-r	laudā-rī	
<i>Impf.</i> laudā-bar	laudā-rer		
<i>Fut.</i> laudā-bor			GERUNDIVE. lauda-ndus

In the same manner, write a table of the forms derived from the present stem of **teneō**, **mittō**, **mūniō**.

LESSON XXX

Third Conjugation: Verbs in *iō*.—The Ablative of Manner.

249. A few verbs of the third conjugation end in **-iō**. They are conjugated like **regō**, except that they have

¹ Do not translate by an infinitive. See 242: 1.

² Compare 246: 14.

-i before **-o** and **-u-** in the present indicative, and also before **-a-** and **-e-** in the imperfect indicative, future indicative, present subjunctive, present participle, gerund and gerundive. Learn from the Appendix (30), the present system (except the imperative) of both voices of the model verb—

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take.

250.

VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, F., daring, boldness. *initium, -ī, N., beginning.*
cōnātum, -ī, N., attempt, undertaking. *calamitās, -tātis, F., disaster, defeat.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, take.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, make, do.¹

iaciō, iacere, iēcī. iactum, throw, hurl.

perficiō (per + faciō), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish.
complete.

iter faciō, march.

251.

MODEL SENTENCE

<i>Cum audāciā</i>	} <i>oppugnābant:</i>	{ <i>with boldness.</i>		
<i>Māgnā audāciā</i>			{ <i>They were attacking</i>	{ <i>with great boldness.</i>
<i>Māgnā cum audāciā</i>				

The ablatives here answer the question *How?* They denote the *manner* of attacking, and therefore are called *ablatives of manner*.

¹ The passive of the simple verb *faciō* is not used in the present system, but is supplied by the irregular verb *fīō* (App. 39). The gerundive, however, is *faciendus*.

252. RULE XX.—*The manner of an action is expressed by a noun in the ablative with cum, if there is no modifying adjective; with or without cum if there is an adjective.*

TRANSLATE

253. 1. Facimus, iacimus. 2. Faciēbātis, iaciēbātis. 3. Faciēmus, iaciēmus. 4. Iaciunt, iacient. 5. Tēla iaciuntur. 6. Cōnāta perficientur. 7. Iter facitis. 8. Facultās praedae faciendae. 9. Facultās per prōvinciam itineris faciendī. 10. Filius ducis capiēbātur. 11. Perficit. 12. Facile est cōnāta perficere. 13. Populus Rōmānus pācem cum Helvētiīs faciet. 14. Hostēs in agrōs finitimōrum iter faciunt. 15. Hostēs in nostrōs veniētēs tēla iaciēbant. 16. Hīc¹ locus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiet. 17. Liscus māgnō cum periculō id faciēbat. 18. Mōns ā nostrīs celeriter capitur. 19. Helvētiīs² facultās per prōvinciam itineris faciendī nōn datur. 20. Māgnā cum virtūte bellum gerunt. 21. Ūna Galliae pars initium capit ā³ flūmine Rhodanō.

254. 1. I was throwing javelins. 2. You will accomplish the undertaking. 3. The Gauls will build (make) forts, that they may defend their territory. 4. The Helvetians marched through the province doing much harm.³ 5. The name of the place will be derived (taken) from the victory of the Germans. 6. All the hostages were taken. 7. We shall give the enemy an opportunity for (of) fighting. 8. He orders the soldiers to take (up) arms. 9. They say that the Belgians are taking up arms. 10. He persuaded the Belgians to take up arms. 11. I fear that the royal power will be seized.

¹ This. ² initium capit ā = begins at. What is the literal meaning of these words? ³ doing much harm = with much harm.

LESSON XXXI

The Pronouns *hic*, *iste*, *ille* and *ipse*.—Caesar, I. 1
(continued).

255. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.—Besides *is* and *idem* (190), there are three other demonstratives: *hic*, *iste* and *ille*.

Hic, *this*; plural, *these*.

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>		<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>		<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
D.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>		<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
Ac.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>		<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Ab.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>		<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

Learn from the Appendix (19), the declension of *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, *that* (*of yours*), and of *ille*, *illa*, *illud*, *that* (*yonder*); *he*, *she*, *it*.

256. *Hic puer* means *this boy* (*near me*); *iste puer*, *that boy* (*near you*); *ille puer*, *that boy* (*yonder, near him*). From this difference in meaning, these pronouns may be called demonstratives of the first, second and third person, respectively.

Ille—*hic* are sometimes correlative, meaning *the former*—*the latter*.

257. INTENSIVE PRONOUN.—*Ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, is called the intensive pronoun, because it emphasizes the word to which it refers: *Ipse ad castra vēnit*, *He* (Caesar) *himself* came to the camp. It sometimes

means *very*: **In ipsīs flūminis rīpīs**, *on the very banks of the river*. In the genitive it may mean *his own, their own*:—**Ipsius cōpiae visae sunt**: *His own troops were seen*. Learn the declension of **ipse** in the Appendix (20).

258.

VOCABULARY

imperium, -ī, N., *command*, **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *himself*, etc.; *control*. *very*.

hūmānitās -tātis, F. (**homō**), **longē**, adv., *far*.

(*humanity*), *civilization*.

proptereā (**propter** + **ea**), adv.,

hīc, **haec**, **hōc**, *this*.

on this account, for this reason.

iste, **ista**, **istud**, *that, that (of yours)*.

proptereā quod, *for the reason that*.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, *that (yonder); he, she, it*.

vel—vel, conj., *either—or*.

absum (**ab** + **sum**), **abesse**, **āfuī**, *be away, be distant*.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (*bring together*), *secure, gain*.

interficiō (**inter** + **faciō**), **ficere**, -fēcī, -fectum, *kill*.

statuō, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtum**, (*set up*), *decide*.

Decline **hīc fortis nauta**, **haec legiō**, **hōc bellum**.

TRANSLATE

259. 1. **Hīc pāgus Lūcium Cassium cōnsulem interfēcit**.
 2. **Hī sunt extrā¹ prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī**.
 3. **Hōrum fortissimī² sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ab hūmānitāte prōvinciae longē absunt**. 4. **Illē locus**. 5. **Illud bellum**. 6. **Illō cōnsiliō**. 7. **Illa pars equitum tēla iēcit**.
 8. **Fīnitimīs illī agrōs dedērunt**. 9. **Ipsē in Ītaliā māgnīs itineribus contendit**. 10. **Ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt**. 11. **Ipsōrum linguā Celtae,³ nostrā Gallī³ appellantur**. 12. **Cōsulēs ipsī**. 13. **Orgetorīx illis⁴ rēgna con-**

¹ See 129.

² *bravest*.

³ Predicate nominative.

⁴ See 63.

ciliābit, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtinēbit. 14. Eōdem tempore Caesar per explorātōrēs cōgnōvit hostēs esse prope ipsius castra. 15. Caesar petit ut vel ipse¹ dē eō² statuāt vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

260. 1. This nation, these nations. 2. Of this legion, of these legions. 3. To this hill, to these hills. 4. By this sailor. 5. By these lieutenants. 6. That standard (of yours). 7. That river (yonder) is deep. 8. They themselves came to Helvetia. 9. Those hostages were given to the king by the Gauls themselves. 10. Caesar hears (that) Dumnorix is³ the very (man).

CAESAR, CHAP. I (CONTINUED): THE PEOPLE OF GAUL.

261. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū¹ atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē² absunt, minimēque³ ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important;⁴ proximīque sunt Germānīs quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter⁵ bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā⁶ Helvētīi quoque⁷ reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecedunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum⁸ aut⁹ suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ cultū, abl. of fourth declension, *refinement*.

² longissimē, adv., *farthest*; modifies *absunt*.

³ minimē, adv., *least*; *minimē saepe*, *very seldom*.

⁴ importō (in + portō, 38), *import*.

⁵ continenter, adv., *continually*.

⁶ quā dē causā, *and for this reason*.

⁷ quoque, adv., *also*.

⁸ cum, conj., *when*.

⁹ aut—aut, correlative conj., *either—or*.

¹ Diviciacus.

² Dumnorix.

³ See 233, Rule XIX.

LESSON XXXII

The Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active.
Synopsis.—Contraction.

262. FORMATION OF PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE.—The pluperfect and future perfect indicative active are formed on the perfect stem, the former by adding the tense-sign *-era-*, the latter, the tense-sign *-eri-*: *laudāv-era-m*, *laudāv-er(i)-o*.

The pluperfect is equivalent to the English past perfect, and therefore denotes action completed in past time: *I had praised*. The future perfect, like the English future perfect, denotes action completed in the future: *I shall have praised*.

263.

MODEL VERBS

PLUPERFECT.			
<i>I had praised.</i>	<i>I had advised.</i>	<i>I had ruled.</i>	<i>I had heard.</i>
laudā veram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
laudā verās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
laudā verat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat
laudā verāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
laudā verātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
laudā verant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

FUTURE PERFECT.			
<i>I shall have praised.¹</i>	<i>I shall have advised.</i>	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
laudāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
laudāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
laudāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
laudāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
laudāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT OF SUM.	
<i>I had been.</i>	<i>I shall have been.</i>
fueram	fuerō
fuerās	fueris
fuerat	fuerit
fuerāmus	fuerimus
fuerātis	fueritis
fuerant	fuerint

Conjugate the pluperfect and the future perfect of *oppugnō*, *teneō*, *agō*, *capiō*.

264. SYNOPSIS.—A *synopsis* is a table consisting of one form of each tense, in the same voice, number and person. Write a synopsis of *laudō* in the second person singular; of *regō* in the third person singular; and of *sum* in the third person plural.

265. CONTRACTION.—Forms derived from perfects in

¹ You, he, they, *will* have praised.

-āvī, -ēvī, -ōvī, sometimes drop *v* and contract the vowels into *ā*, *ē*, *ō*, respectively. Forms derived from perfects in -īvī- drop *v*, but contraction occurs only with -is.

laudāvistī,	contracted into	laudāstī.
laudāvistis,	"	" laudāstis.
laudāvērunt,	"	" laudārunt.
laudāveram, etc.,	"	" laudāram, laudārās, etc.
laudāverō, etc.	"	" laudārō, laudāris, etc.
audīvistī, etc.	"	" audistī, etc.
audīveram, etc.	"	" audieram, etc.
audīverō, etc.	"	" audierō, etc.

266.

VOCABULARY

angustiae, -ārum (angustus), Bōiī, Bōiōrum, *m.*, *Boii* (a *F.*, *narrowness, narrow pass.* Celtic tribe).

Nōrēia, -ae, *F.*, *Norcia* (a *iam*, adv., *already, now, by this time.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand, levy, order, command.*

āvertō (ā + vertō), -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn aside.*

revertō (re + vertō), etc., *return.*¹

trādūcō (trāns + dūcō, 83); *lead across, bring over.*

TRANSLATE

267. 1. Habuerat, dixerat. 2. Cōgnōverat, incenderant. 3. Ēgerit, coēgerimus. 4. Imperāveris. 5. Castra posuerimus. 6. Cōnsidius fuerat cum Crassō. 7. Casticī pater rēgnū obtinuerat. 8. Caesar suōs mīlitēs revocāverit. 9. Mīlitēs ex prōvinciā convēnerant. 10. Mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convēnērunt. 11. Hīc pāgus ēius exercitum²

¹ The present system of *revertō* is not used in the active, but in the passive with active meaning.

² *army.*

sub iugum mīserat. 12. Iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant. 13. Ibi Helvētiī erunt, ubi Caesar eōs esse cōstituerit. 14. Bōiī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et Nōrēiam oppūgnāverant. 15. Ea diēs¹ quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt. 16. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant.

268. 1. I shall have come. 2. You had replied. 3. They had spent-the-winter near Noreia. 4. We shall have returned to this town through the narrow pass. 5. Caesar had turned (his) course² from the Helvetians. 6. The same lieutenants had demanded a great number of hostages. 7. They have come for the purpose of importing grain.³

LESSON XXXIII—REVIEW

CAESAR, I. I (CONCLUDED)

269. 1. How is the imperfect subjunctive formed? 2. When is this tense used in a clause of purpose? 3. How does the present passive infinitive differ from the present active? 4. What is a complementary infinitive? 5. What construction is used after a verb meaning *say, think*, etc.? 6. How is the present participle formed? 7. The gerund? 8. The gerundive? 9. In what respects does the gerund differ from the gerundive? 10. What are the tense-signs of the pluperfect and future perfect indicative? 11. Decline *hic, ille* and *audiēns*. 12. Write a synopsis of *iaciō* in the third person singular, indicative active.

¹ *day*.

² *iter*.

³ See 199 and 242.

270.

Review Vocabulary

angustiae	nōnnūllī	dēsperō	cōstituō
audācia	parātus	effeminō	dīcō
animus	quālis	imperō	interclūdō
castellum	hīc	impetrō	statuō
cōnātum	ille	supportō	sūmō
imperium	ipse	vītō	trādūcō
initium	iam	dēleō	capiō
tēlum	ibi	fleō	faciō
calamitās	proptereā	obtimeō	iaciō
cupiditās	sīc	remaneō	interficiō
facultās	aut-aut	respondeō	perficiō
hūmānitās	vel-vel	terreō	commūniō
mūnitiō	comportō	ascendō	absum
suspīciō	conciliō	āvertō	
timor	coniūrō	revertō	
turpitūdō	dēliberō	cōgnōscō	

271.

Review Sentences

1. Diviciācus flēns haec ā Caesare petit. 2. Caesar cōgnōscit hās esse causās coniūrandī. 3. Decima legiō est parāta ad bellum gerendum. 4. Helvētiī in nostrōs venientēs tēla iaciēbant. 5. Facultās per prōvinciam itineris faciendī dabātur. 6. Oppidum nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem. 7. Hīc locus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī nōmen capiet. 8. Liscus māgnō cum periculō id faciēbat. 9. Mōns ā nostrīs celeriter capitur. 10. Per explōrātōrēs Caesar montem ā suīs tenērī cōgnōvit. 11. Helvētiī pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre cōstituērunt. 12. Hī sunt idem quibuscum Helvētiī contendērunt. 13. Bōiī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et Nōrēiam oppūgnāverant. 14. Helvētiī per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant. 15. E

Gallis persuāsērunt ut oppida incenderent. 16. Nōn-nūllī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. 17. Caesar explōrātōrēs mīsit, quī cōgnōscerent quālis esset nātūra montis. 18. Equitēs, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnāvērunt. 19. Frūmentum comportārī dīcunt. 20. Helvētiōs finēs angustōs habēre dīxērunt. 21. Orgetorīgem causam dīcere coēgērunt. 22. Caesar petit ut vel ipse dē eō statuatur vel cīvī-tātem statuere iubeat.

CAESAR, I. I (CONCLUDED): THE BOUNDARIES OF GAUL.

272. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est,¹ initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit² etiam³ ab⁴ Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; ver-git ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab⁵ extrēmīs⁶ Galliae finibus oriuntur,⁷ pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī, spectant⁸ in septentriōnem et orientem⁹ sōlem.⁹ Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pūrēnaeos montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum¹⁰ sōlis et septentriōnēs. 10

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ dictum est, *it has been said* (perf. passive ind.). Compare 234, 11.

² attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *border upon*.

³ etiam, adv., *even*.

⁴ ab, *on the side of*.

⁵ ab, *at*.

⁶ extrēmus, -a, -um, *farthest*.

⁷ orior (passive form with active meaning), *rise, begin*; oriēns (237), *rising*.

⁸ spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *face*.

⁹ sōl, sōlis, M., *sun*.

¹⁰ occāsum, acc. of fourth declen., *setting*; occāsum sōlis, *setting of the sun, the west*.

LESSON XXXIV

The Perfect Participle.—The Ablative Absolute.

273. SUPINE STEM.—The *supine stem* is found by dropping **-um** of the supine (17, 18): **laudāt-, monit-, rēct-, capt-, audīt-**.

274. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.—The perfect participle (236) is found only in the passive voice, and is equivalent in meaning to the English perfect passive participle. It is formed by adding **-us, -a, -um**, etc., to the supine stem.

laudātus, -ā, -um, *praised, having been praised.*

monitus, -a, -um, *advised, having been advised.*

rēctus, -a, -um, *ruled, having been ruled.*

captus, -a, -um, *taken, having been taken.*

audītus, -a, -um, *heard, having been heard.*

275. The perfect participle may be used (1) like an appositive adjective, in agreement with a noun or pronoun ; (2) like a predicate adjective, to form the compound tenses of the passive voice (283). The former use is shown in the following:

1. **Militēs, trāns Rhēnum trāductī, castra posuērunt:** *The soldiers, having been led over the Rhine, pitched the camp.*
2. **Fīlia prīncipis, ab hostibus capta, ad castra dūcēbātur:** *The daughter of the chief, having been captured by the enemy, was led to the camp.*

276. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.—(a) An ablative absolute is a phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun in the

ablative, and a participle, an adjective or another noun in agreement with it. It may therefore be:

1. A noun (or pronoun) + a participle (predicate).
See models 1-4 in 277.
2. A noun (or pronoun) + an adjective (predicate).
See model 5 in 277.
3. A noun (or pronoun) + a noun (predicate). See
model 6 in 277.

(b) An ablative absolute often denotes one of the following ideas:

1. Time (*when, after*). See models 1 and 6 in 277.
2. Cause (*because, since*). See model 2 in 277.
3. Concession (*although*). “ “ 3 “ 277.
4. Condition (*if*). “ “ 4 “ 277.

277.

MODELS

1. **Proeliō factō**: (*the battle having been fought*), *when* (or *after*) *the battle was fought*. (Time.)
2. **Nostris succēdentibus**¹: (*our men advancing*), *because* (or *since, while, when*) *our men were advancing*. (Cause or time.)
3. **Paucis**² **dēfendentibus**: (*few defending*), *though the defenders were few*. (Concession.)
4. **Datā facultāte**: (*an opportunity having been given*), *if an opportunity should be given*. (Condition.)
5. **Caesare invītō**³: (*Caesar being unwilling*), *against Caesar's will*.
6. **Messālā cōsule**: (*Messala being consul*), *when Messala was consul, in the consulship of Messala*. (Time.)

¹ succēdō (sub + cēdō), -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *come up, advance*.

² paucī, -ōrum (adj. as noun), *few*.

³ invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*.

Notice that these phrases when translated literally, as in the parentheses, are equivalent to the English nominative absolute. But it will be found that this is usually not the best equivalent. It is often better to translate by a clause beginning with *when*, *since* or *if*, etc., the proper word being determined only by the thought of the sentence.

278. Helvētiīs pācātīs, Caesar cum Germānīs contendit :
Having subdued the Helvetians, Caesar fought with the Germans.

Latin, having no active perfect participle, very often uses the passive in place of it, as in the illustration. To do this, notice that it puts the English object (*Helvetians*) in the ablative case, forming an ablative absolute with the participle (*pācātīs*). The literal meaning of *Helvētiīs pācātīs* is, *the Helvetians having been subdued*, etc., but as Caesar did the action expressed by *pācātīs* as well as by *contendit*, that fact is best expressed by the translation given above.

Note.—The perfect participle of deponent verbs (356) is an exception to this usage, for, having an active meaning, it may be used in agreement with the subject like an English active perfect. This is illustrated in 361, 15.

279. RULE XXI.—*A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a noun, adjective or participle in agreement with it, may form an ablative absolute.*

280.

VOCABULARY

inopia, -ae, F., *scarcity*.

Allobrogēs, -um, M., *Allobroges*

praesidium, ī, N., *guard*.

(a tribe near Lake Geneva).

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *accuse*.

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *wait for, expect*.

permovere (**per** + **moveō**, 45), (*move thoroughly*), *influence*.

adducō (**ad** + **dūcō**, 83), (*lead to*), *induce*.

inducō (**in** + **dūcō**, 83), (*lead on*), *induce*.

dispōnō (**dis** + **pōnō**, 166), *station*.

iungō, **iungere**, **iūnxī**, **iūctum**, *join*.

trādō, **trādere**, **trādidī**, **trāditum**, *give up, surrender*.

TRANSLATE

281. 1. Rēgnō occupātō.¹ 2. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō.¹
3. Armīs trāditīs.² 4. Gallī hāc ōrātiōne adductī coniūrā-
tiōnem faciunt. 5. Eō opere perfectō,³ Caesar praesidia
dispōnit. 6. Helvētiī nāvibus iūctīs⁵ flūmen trāseunt.⁶
7. Nostrī signō datō impetum⁷ fēcērunt. 8. Convocatīs
prīncipibus, Caesar eōs accūsāt. 9. Equitēs ā cīvitate missī
ad Caesarem vēnērunt. 10. Labiēnus, monte occupātō,
nostrōs exspectābat. 11. Orgetorīx, Messālā et Pīsōne cōn-
sullibus, rēgnī cupiditate inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis
fēcīt. 12. Galba frūmentī inopiā permōtus in prōvinciam
contendit et, nūllō hoste prohibente,⁴ legiōnem in Allobro-
gēs perdūxit. 13. Caesar lēgātōs nāvēs exspectāre iussit.
14. Militēs ipsī sunt parātī ad oppūgnandam Nōrēiam.

282. 1. (When) the towns (were) burned, the Helve-
tians were ready. 2. Induced by the influence of Or-
getorix, the Helvetians made peace. 3. (After) all Gaul
(was) subdued, our (forces) were led into the territory of
the Belgae. 4. (Though) the guard (was) small, the en-
emy did not make an attack. 5. Many villages will be
captured by the troops under the leadership⁶ of Labienus.

¹ Translate by a clause expressing time.

² " " " " condition.

³ " " " " time, or see 278.

⁴ " " " " cause.

⁵ See 278. ⁶ *cross.* ⁷ *attack*, accusative. ⁸ *under the leadership of*
Labienus = Labienus (being) leader.

6. The Allobroges say that the guard is expected. 7. Caesar had sent ships to transport¹ the troops. (Translate the last sentence in two ways.)

LESSON XXXV

The Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Passive.—Review of Indicative, Active and Passive.

283. FORMATION OF PASSIVE PERFECT TENSES.—In the passive voice, the perfect, pluperfect and future perfect are formed by combining respectively the present, imperfect and future of **sum** with the perfect participle of the given verb: perfect, **laudātus sum**; pluperfect, **laudātus eram**; future perfect, **laudātus erō**. These tenses, consisting of two words, are called *compound tenses*; other tenses, consisting of one word, may be called *simple tenses*.

284.

MODEL VERBS

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

I have been praised, I was praised.

laudātus sum

laudātus es

laudātus est

laudātī sumus

laudātī estis

laudātī sunt

monitus sum, *I have been advised, I was advised.*

rēctus sum, *I have been ruled, I was ruled.*

captus sum, *I have been taken, I was taken.*

audītus sum, *I have been heard, I was heard.*

¹ trānsportō (trāns + portō).

PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

I had been praised.

laudātus eram

laudātus erās

laudātus erat

laudātī erāmus

laudātī erātis

laudātī erant

monitus eram, *I had been advised.*rēctus eram, *I had been ruled.*captus eram, *I had been taken.*audītus eram, *I had been heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE.

I shall have been praised.

laudātus erō

laudātus eris

laudātus erit

laudātī erimus

laudātī eritis

laudātī erunt

monitus erō, *I shall have been advised.*rēctus erō, *I shall have been ruled.*captus erō, *I shall have been taken.*audītus erō, *I shall have been heard.*

Write a synopsis of the model verbs in the passive voice, indicative mood.

285. AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE.—The participle agrees with the subject in gender, as well as number and case. For a feminine subject we should have **laudāta sum**, **laudātae sumus**, etc.; for a neuter, **laudātum est**, **laudāta sunt**. If a verb has two or more subjects of different genders, the participle is masculine if the subjects denote persons, neuter if they denote things, or it

may agree with the nearest subject, as **captus** in the following sentence:

Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est: *A daughter and one of the sons of Orgetorix were captured.*

286. PRINCIPAL PARTS IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.—The principal parts of a verb in the passive voice are the present indicative, present infinitive and perfect indicative: **laudor, laudārī, laudātus sum.**

Write the passive parts of the other model verbs and of **iubeō, dūcō** and **iaciō**.

287. TABLE OF INDICATIVE ENDINGS.

<i>First Person Singular.</i>		
	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	-ō	-r
<i>Impf.</i>	-bam	-bar
<i>Fut.</i>	-bō, -am	-bor, -ar
<i>Perf.</i>	-ī	-us sum
<i>Plup.</i>	-eram	-us eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	-erō	-us erō

288. VOCABULARY

nūper, adv., *recently*.

indiciūm, -ī, N. (dīcō), *information; per
indiciūm, through an informer.*

TRANSLATE

289. 1. **Missus erō.** 2. **Missī eritis.** 3. **Missī estis.** 4. **Missī erātis.** 5. **Ad Galliam missus eram.** 6. **Pāx cōfirmāta erit.**

7. Duæ legiōnēs cōscrip̄ptae erunt. 8. Nūntiātum est
 9. Appellātae sunt. 10. Pīla importāta erant. 11. Ab
 hostibus captī erimus. 12. Ā mīlite vīsus eris. 13. Id
 Caesarī nūntiātum erat. 14. Ea coniūratiō Helvētiīs per
 indicium est ēnūntiāta. 15. Pater Casticī ā populō Rō-
 mānō amīcus appellātus erat. 16. Inter finēs Helvētiōrum
 et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit.
 17. Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ¹ ante dictum est, posita
 est. 18. Caesaris cōpiaē prope hostium castra vīsaē erant.
 19. Agrīs vāstātīs, cīvitās arma trādīdit. 20. Iaciet.
 21. Viderat, vīderit. 22. Vidēs. 23. Videndī causā.
 24. Parātus ad videnda castra.

290. 1. We have been influenced. 2. The town had
 been defended. 3. The boys will have been captured.
 4. You have been called friend. 5. You have been called
 friends. 6. The fields have been laid waste.² 7. I have
 been ordered³ to report the victory. 8. They will have
 been led across the bridge. 9. Stones and javelins had
 been thrown⁴ from⁵ the wall. 10. He persuaded the
 sailors to transport the booty.

LESSON XXXVI

Comparison of Adjectives.—Declension of Comparatives.

291. DEGREES OF COMPARISON.—Adjectives in Latin
 as in English have three degrees: positive, comparative
 and superlative. Most adjectives in Latin are com-
 pared by changing the ending: long-**us**, long-**ior**, long-**-issimus**, *long*, *long-er*, *long-est*.

¹ Ut with the indicative generally means *as*.

² vāstō.

³ iubeō.

⁴ What gender? See 285. ⁵ dē.

292. The comparative is formed by adding **-ior** for the masculine and feminine, and **-ius** for the neuter, to the base of the positive; the superlative, by adding **-issimus, -a, -um**.

BASE.	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
long-	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{longus} \\ \text{-a, -um} \end{array} \right\}$	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
grav-	gravis, -e	gravior, -ius	gravissimus, -a, -um
potent-	potēns	potentior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um

293. Positives in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative of the positive.

BASE.	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
ācr-	ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
liber-	liber, -era, -erum	liberior, -ius	liberrimus, -a, -um

294. Six positives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the base of the positive. They are **facilis**, *easy*, **difficilis**, *difficult*, **similis**, *like*, **dis-similis**, *unlike*, **gracilis**, *slender*, **humilis**, *low*.

BASE.	POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
facil-	facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um

Compare **fortis**, **dēnsus**, **lātus**, **miser**, **vēlōx**.

295. **DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES.**—The comparative of an adjective belongs to the third declension. Learn the declension of the model comparative **longior** in the Appendix (13).

Decline **longius bellum, longior via.**

296. The comparative is usually translated by *more* or *-er*, but sometimes by *too* or *rather*; the superlative by *most* or *-est*, but sometimes by *very*; **longior, -ius**, *longer, too long, rather long*; **longissimus, -a, -um**, *longest, very long*.

297.

VOCABULARY

āgmen, āgminis, N. (**agō**), *army* (on the march), *line* (of troops).

novissimum āgmen, *rear* (of an army), *rear guard*.

primum āgmen, *front* (of an army), *van*.

cohors, cohortis, F., *cohort* (tenth of a legion).

firmus, -a, -um, *strong, firm*.

ferāx, -ācis, adj., *fertile*.

nōbilis, -e, *famous, noble, well-born*.

impendeō (in + **pendeō**), **-ēre, —, —**, *overhang*.

circumdūcō (**circum** + **dūcō**, 83), *lead around*.

TRANSLATE

298. 1. Lātius flūmen. 2. Lātiōris flūminis. 3. Altiōrēs rīpae. 4. Graviōribus tēlīs. 5. Per dēnsiōrēs silvās. 6. In dēnsissimās silvās. 7. Ā novissimō āgmine. 8. Inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum (āgmen). 9. Per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs. 10. Helvētiī parātiōrēs ad bellum gerendum erunt. 11. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 12. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. 13. Iter est facilius. 14. Iter erat nōn difficillimum. 15. Agrī sunt lātissimī et ferācissimī. 16. Pūblius Cōnsidius perītissimus habēbātur.¹ 17. Mōns altissimus impendēbat. 18. Helvētiī lēgātōs² nōbilissi-

¹ *was considered*.

² *as ambassadors*, in apposition with **nōbilissimōs**.

mōs¹ cīvitātis mittunt. 19. Ūnā ex parte Helvētia flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, continētur. 20. Cohortēs longiōre itinere circumductae sunt. 21. Cohortibus decem ad mare relictīs, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit.

299. 1. With a stronger guard. 2. Across a broader river. 3. Into a more fertile field. 4. Of the highest mountain. 5. The sword is too heavy. 6. I have seen the rear guard. 7. The footmen will be very swift. 8. The children of the most famous (men) of the tribe had been sent (as) hostages. 9. The chief feared that the children would be killed.

LESSON XXXVII

Comparison of Adjectives (continued).—The Ablative after a Comparative.

300. The following adjectives are compared irregularly:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great, large</i>	māior, māius	māximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small, little</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>	plūrēs, plūra	plūrimī, -ae, -a

Learn the declension of **plūs** in the Appendix (14).

¹ Used as a noun, object of mittunt.

301.

vetus , <i>old</i>	vetustior	veterrimus
senex , <i>old</i>	senior (<i>māior nātū</i> ¹)	māximus nātū ¹
iuvenis , <i>young</i>	iūnior (<i>minor nātū</i>)	minimus nātū
dīves , <i>rich</i>	dītior	dītissimus (<i>dīvi-</i> <i>tissimus</i>)

Learn the declension of **vetus** in the Appendix (14).

302.

MODEL SENTENCE

Helvētia est minor	{ quam Aquitānia	} <i>Helvetia is smaller</i> <i>than Aquitania.</i>
	or	
	{ Aquitāniā	

In this sentence notice that comparison is expressed with the conjunction **quam**, *than*, both nouns being in the same case, or without **quam**, the second noun then being in the ablative.

303. RULE XXII.—*When two persons or things are compared, the name of the second is put in the ablative if **quam**, meaning than, is omitted.*

NOTE.—**Quam** may be omitted when the name of the first of the two persons or things is in the nominative or accusative case.

304.

VOCABULARY

fortūna , -ae, F., <i>fortune, lot.</i>	hiems , hiemis , F., <i>winter.</i>
carrus , -ī, M., carrum , -ī, N., brevis , -e, <i>short.</i>	
<i>cart.</i>	dīves , dīvitis , <i>rich.</i>

¹ *nātū*, an abl. of the fourth declension, meaning *by birth*; sometimes omitted.

iumentum, -ī, N., *beast of burden*. māiōrēs, -um, M., pl. adj. used as noun, *elders, ancestors*.

continēns, -entis, F., *continent*.

quam, conj. and adv., *than, as*; with superlatives, *as—as possible*.¹

nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sail*.

coēmō (con + emō), -ēmere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *buy up*.

discō, discere, didicī, —, *learn*.

impōnō (in + pōnō, 166), *place on, mount on*.

redūcō (re + dūcō, 83), *lead back*.

TRANSLATE

305. 1. Minima altitudō flūminis. 2. Plūrēs Germānī Rhēnum² trāductī sunt. 3. Omnēs māiōrēs ad imperātōrem vērunt. 4. Helvētīī ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicerant. 5. Caesar quattuor legiōnēs in māiōra castra edūxit. 6. Auxilia prō minōribus castris cōstituit. 7. Apud Helvētiōs nōbilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorīx. 8. Gallī plūrimās nāvēs, quibus in Britanniam nāvīgant, habent. 9. Difficultās nāvīgandī. 10. Quam plūrimae cīvitatēs. 11. Sēmentēs quam māximās faciunt. 12. Helvētīī iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmunt. 13. Caesar in equōs suōs mīlitēs imposuit, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum habēret. 14. Noctēs in Britannīā breviōrēs esse quam in continentī vidēbāmus. 15. Hieme diēs³ sunt breviōrēs noctibus. 16. Fortūna Sēquanōrum miserior est quam (fortūna) reliquōrum Gallōrum.

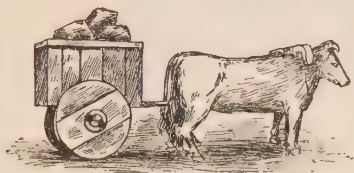
306. 1. Peace is better than war. 2. These ships are broader than the Roman ships. 3. We have a sword heavier than a spear. 4. The Helvetians burned as many towns (as possible). 5. Very many beasts (of burden)

¹ For example, *quam māximus*, *as large as possible, the largest possible*.

² Depends on *trā-* (= *trāns*) in the verb.

³ *days*.

have been seen near the river. 6. The cart is too large.
7. The-rest-of the ships are ready to sail (for sailing).



Carrus et Iumenta

LESSON XXXVIII

Comparison of Adjectives (concluded).—The Ablative of Degree of Difference.—The Dative with Adjectives.

307. Some comparatives and superlatives have no positive, but are referred to corresponding adverbs or prepositions.

	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>cis, citrā, on this side,</i>	<i>citerior, hither,</i>	<i>citimus, hithermost.</i>
<i>in, intrā, in, within,</i>	<i>interior, inner,</i>	<i>intimus, inmost.</i>
<i>prae, prō, before,</i>	<i>prior, former,</i>	<i>prīmus, first.</i>
<i>prope, near,</i>	<i>propior, nearer,</i>	<i>proximus, nearest.</i>
<i>ultrā, beyond,</i>	<i>ulterior, farther,</i>	<i>ultimus, farthest.</i>

308. The following positives are rare except as nouns:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
(<i>exterus</i>)	<i>exterior, outer,</i>	<i>extrēmus (extimus),</i> <i>extreme, farthest.</i>
(<i>inferus</i>)	<i>inferior, lower,</i>	<i>īnfirmus (īmus), lowest.</i>
(<i>posterus</i>)	<i>posterior, latter,</i>	<i>postrēmus (postumus), last.</i>
(<i>superus</i>)	<i>superior, higher,</i>	<i>suprēmus (summus),</i> <i>highest, greatest,</i>

309. Adjectives in **-eus**, **-ius** and **-uus** (except **-quus**) are compared by means of **magis** (*more*) and **māximē** (*most*): **idōneus**, *suitable*, **magis idōneus**, *more suitable*, **māximē idōneus**, *most suitable*.

NOTE.—Many adjectives in Latin as in English cannot be compared.

310.**VOCABULARY**

pēs, pedis, M., *foot*.

turris, -is, F., *tower*.

profectiō, -ōnis, F., *departure, retreat*.

apertus, -a, -um, *open, exposed*.

311.**MODEL SENTENCES**

1. **Gladius est quattuor pedibus brevior pīlō**: *The sword is four feet shorter (shorter by four feet) than the javelin.*
2. **Iter est multō facilius**: *The way is much easier (easier by much).*

How much shorter is the sword? Is the way easier? The ablatives **pedibus** and **multō**, used in answering these questions, denote the *degree of difference*. The ablative of degree of difference usually answers the question *By how much?*

312. RULE XXIII. —*The ablative is used with comparatives to denote the degree of difference.*

313.**MODEL SENTENCES**

1. **Helvētiī sunt proximī Germānīs**: *The Helvetians are next to the Germans.*
2. **Locus est idōneus castrīs**: *The place is suitable for a camp.*
3. **Puer est similis patrī**: *The boy is like (his) father.*

Notice that after **proximī**, **idōneus** and **similis** the noun towards which the quality is directed is in the dative. This construction is called the *dative with adjectives*.

314. RULE XXIV.—*The dative is used with adjectives implying nearness, fitness, likeness, etc.*

TRANSLATE

315. 1. Interior Gallia. 2. *Ē* locō superiōre. 3. Ex inferiōre locō. 4. Ad inferiōrem partem Rhēnī. 5. In ulteriōre Galliā. 6. Ultimae nātiōnēs. 7. Ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus. 8. In proximum collem. 9. Cum proximīs cīvitatibus. 10. Multō fortior mīles. 11. Multō minor pars āgminis. 12. Profectiō erat similis fugae. 13. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus est Genāva. 14. Locīs superiōribus occupātīs,¹ itinere cōpiās prohibent. 15. Summus² mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur. 16. Collis infimus² erat apertus. 17. Ad extrēmās² fossās castella cōstituit. 18. Turrēs decem pedibus quam mūrus altiōrēs sunt. 19. Monet ut omnēs suspiciōnēs vītet. 20. Puerī Hispāniam esse proximam Galliae didicērunt.

316. 1. The farthest parts of the town. 2. A mountain is very near the town. 3. The lowest (part of the) tower. 4. On the top (of the) hill were many animals. 5. The soldier is like his friend. 6. The bank is a foot higher than the river. 7. He heard that the men were suitable for the work. 8. They hear (that) the towers are very high. 9. Messala has many horses and carts (*Express* in two ways).

¹ See 279.

² **Summus** sometimes means *the highest part of, the top of*; **infimus**, *the lowest part of, the bottom of*; **extrēmus**, *the end of*.

LESSON XXXIX—REVIEW

CAESAR, I. 2 (BEGUN)

317. 1. How is the perfect participle used? 2. What is an ablative absolute? 3. What is a compound tense? 4. How is the comparative degree regularly formed? 5. The superlative? 6. The superlative of adjectives in **-er** and **-lis**? 7. Name the six adjectives having **-limus** in the superlative? 8. Compare **bonus**, **malus**, **māgnus**, **parvus**, **multus**. 9. What case is used after a comparative? 10. With what adjectives is the dative used? 11. Write a synopsis of **iungō** in the active, third singular. 12. Of **accūsō** in the passive, third plural.

318.

Review Vocabulary

fortūna	māiōrēs	ferāx	circumdūcō
inopia	pēs	nōbilis	indūcō
carrus	profectiō	nūper	redūcō
indiciū	turris	quam	coēmō
iūmentum	apertus	accūsō	discō
paucī	fīrmus	expectō	dispōnō
praesidium	idōneus	impendeō	impōnō
āgmen	invītus	permoveō	iungō
cohors	brevis	addūcō	trādō
hiems	dīves		

319.

Review Sentences

1. Equitēs, auxiliī causā ā cīvitatē missī, ad Caesarē vērunt. 2. Labiēnus monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat. 3. Ea coniūratiō est Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta. 4. Inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus influit. 5. Pūblius Cōnsidius

peritissimus habebatur. 6. Mōns altissimus impendebat. 7. Sēmentēs quam māximās faciunt. 8. Caesar auxilia prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit. 9. Helvētīi iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmunt. 10. Fortīna Sēquanōrum miserior est quam reliquōrum. 11. Summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbatur. 12. Locīs superiōribus occupātis, itinere cōpiās prohibent. 13. Eō opere perfectō, Caesar praesidia disposuit. 14. Convocātis prīncipibus, Caesar eōs accūsāt. 15. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus est Genāva.

320. HISTORICAL NOTE.—During the year 58 B.C. Caesar conducted two campaigns, one against a Gallic tribe, the Helvetii, another against Ariovistus, a German king. The account of the Helvetian campaign, Chapters 2 to 29 of the first book of the “Commentaries,” is given in this book.

321. CAESAR, I. 2 (BEGUN): THE HELVETIANS AND THE PLANS OF ORGETORIX.

Apud Helvētiōs longē¹ nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorix. Is, M.² Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent³: perfacile esse,⁴ cum⁵ virtūte⁶ omnibus⁷ prae- 5 stārent,⁸ tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī.⁹

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ longē, adv., *far, by far*.

² M., abbreviation of Mārcus, a Roman name.

³ exīrent (impf. subjunctive of exeō), *go out*.

⁴ (dixit) perfacile esse, *he said it was very easy*,

⁵ cum, conj., *since* (followed by the subjunctive, 465).

⁶ See 144.

⁷ praestārent governs the dative.

⁸ praestō (prae + stō), -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, (*stand before*), *excel*.

⁹ potīrī, *to secure*; governs the ablative.

LESSON XL

Adverbs: Their Formation and Comparison.—Use of Adverbs.

322. FORMATION OF ADVERBS.—Adverbs are derived chiefly from adjectives.

(a) Some are derived from adjectives of the first and second declension by adding **-ē** to the base: **lātus**, *wide*, **lātē**, *widely*.

(b) Some are derived from adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** (**-iter**) to the base: **gravis**, *heavy*, **graviter**, *heavily*, **prūdēns**,¹ *prudent*, **prūdentē**, *prudently*.

323. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.—Adverbs are compared thus: the comparative is the neuter comparative of the adjective (292); the superlative is the superlative of the adjective with final **-us** changed to **-ē**.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
lātē , <i>widely</i>	lātius	lātissimē
liberē , <i>freely</i>	liberius	liberrimē
facile , <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
graviter , <i>heavily, severely</i>	gravius	gravissimē
bene , <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male , <i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimē
—	magis (<i>more</i>)	māximē (<i>most</i>)
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
parum , <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū , <i>long</i> (in time)	diūtius	diūtissimē
prope , <i>near</i>	propius	proximē
saepe , <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē

¹ Bases in **-t** (**prūdēt-**) drop this letter before the ending **-ter**.

324. In the expressions *fortiter pūgnat*, *magis idōneus*, *minus facile*, notice that an adverb modifies the verb *pūgnat*, the adjective *idōneus* and the adverb *facile*.

325. RULE XXV.—*An adverb may modify a verb, adjective or another adverb.*

326.

VOCABULARY

Bibracte, -is, N., *Bibracte* (a town of the Haedui).

plēbs, *plēbis*, F., *the common people*.

acceptus, -a, -um, *pleasing, popular with* (used with dative).

cōpiōsus, -a, -um (*cōpia*), *well-supplied, wealthy*.

audāx, -ācis, adj., *bold*.

conlocō (*con* + *locō*), -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *place, station*.

permittō (*per* + *mittō*), (*let go*), *intrust, allow, permit*.

TRANSLATE

327. 1. *Minimē saepe*. 2. *Belgae ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt*. 3. *Continenter bellum gerunt*. 4. *Orgetorīx facilius eīs persuāsīt*. 5. *Minus lātē*. 6. *Minus facile*. 7. *Orgetorīx māximē plēbī acceptus erat*. 8. *Nostrī cum Helvētiīs proelium cupidius committunt*. 9. *Audācius pūgnant*. 10. *Caesar graviter prīncipēs accūsāt*. 11. *Multō grāvius*. 12. *Liscus dīcit liberius atque audācius*. 13. *Ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, Caesar aberat*. 14. *In summō iugō suās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē¹ cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia conlocāvit*. 15. *Diū atque ācritēr pūgnāvērunt*. 16. *Suīs² imperāvit³ nē tēla iacerent*. 17. *Huic permīsīt,³ utī in hīs locīs legiōnem conlocāret*. 18. *Conlocārī*. 19. *Conlocāns*. 20. *Conlocandī*. 21. *Conlocandus*.⁴

328. 1. The soldiers will not defend the town (any)

¹ *last*.

² Supply *militibus*, indirect object.

³ See 206.

⁴ See 241.

longer. 2. The lieutenant came more quickly than the messenger. 3. The town was captured ¹ very easily. 4. The enemy boldly threw their javelins. 5. We shall send the messengers as quickly ² (as possible). 6. He commands ³ his (men) to do the same (thing). 7. Those who were popular with the common people had come together for the purpose of buying grain.

LESSON XLI

The Fourth Declension.—Caesar, I. 2 (continued).

329. GENITIVE SINGULAR.—The fourth declension includes all nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ūs**.

330. GENDER.—Most nouns of the fourth declension are masculine. **Domus**, *house*, **manus**, *hand*, **Īdūs** (pl.), *Ides*, and a few others are feminine. **Cornū**, *horn*, **genū**, *knee*, and **verū**, *a spit*, are neuter.

331.

MODEL NOUNS

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	ENDINGS.	
	Manus , f., <i>hand</i> .	Base: man- .		
N.	manus	manūs	-us	-ūs
G.	manūs	manuum	-ūs	-uum
D.	manuī (manū)	manibus	-uī (-ū)	-ibus
Ac.	manum	manūs	-um	-ūs
Ab.	manū	manibus	-ū	-ibus
	Cornū , n., <i>horn</i> .	Base: corn- .		
N.	cornū	cornua	-ū	-ua
G.	cornūs	cornuum	-ūs	-uum
D.	cornū	cornibus	-ū	-ibus
Ac.	cornū	cornua	-ū	-ua
Ab.	cornū	cornibus	-ū	-ibus

¹ expūgnō.

² quam + superlative; see 304.

³ imperō + ut.

332. SPECIAL ENDINGS.—*Domus* (*house*) has *domō* or *domū* in the ablative singular, *domī* in the locative (*at home*), *domōs* or *domūs* in the accusative plural. *Artūs*, *limbs*, *portus*, *harbor*, and dissyllables in *-cus* have *-ubus* or *-ibus* in the dative and ablative plural.

333.

VOCABULARY

cōspectus, -ūs, M., *sight*.

cornū, -ūs, N., *horn*, *wing*
(*of an army*).

cultus, -ūs, M., *civilization*.

domus, -ūs, F., *house*, *home*.

equitātus -ūs, M. (*equus*),
cavalry.

exercitus, -ūs, M., *army*.

impetus, -ūs, M., *attack*.

lacus, -ūs, M., *lake*.

manus, -ūs, F., *hand*.

occāsus, -ūs, M., *falling*, *setting*.

prīncipātus -ūs (*prīnceps*),
M. *leadership*.

senātus, -ūs, M., *senate*.

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right*.

sustineō (*sub* + *teneō*), -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *withstand*,
endure.

Decline together *īdem exercitus* and *hīc altior lacus*.

TRANSLATE

334. 1. *Ā cultū prōvinciae absunt.* 2. *Germānī cultum Gallōrum laudāvērunt.* 3. *Aquītānia spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.* 4. *Tertiā ex parte Helvētia lacū Lemannō continētur.* 5. *Ā senātū populī Rōmānī¹ amīcus appellātus erat.* 6. *Dumnorīx prīncipātum in cīvitate obtinēbat.* 7. *Meō exercitū rēgnum conciliābō.* 8. *In cōspectū exercitūs nostrī² agrī Haeduōrum vāstābantur.* 9. *Dumnorīx māgnū numerū equitātūs habet.* 10. *Caesar equitātum, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit.*

¹ *populī Rōmānī* modifies *senātū*.

² *nostrī* modifies *exercitūs*.

11. Hostēs diūtius nostrōrum impetūs nōn sustinuērunt.
 12. Oppidum et ¹ nātūrā locī et ¹ manū mūnītum erat.
 13. Auctōritās Dīviciācī erat māgna domī atque in reliquā
 Galliā. 14. In dextrō cornū duae legiōnēs conlocābuntur.

335. 1. In the lakes. 2. By the attacks. 3. To the senate. 4. For the armies. 5. Of the hand. 6. Of the hands. 7. The height of the houses. 8. The animals have very long horns. 9. The army was sent under the yoke. 10. A sword is in the lieutenant's right hand. 11. They say that a sword is in his hand.

336. CAESAR, I. 2 (CONTINUED) : THE BOUNDARIES OF HELVETIA

Id ¹ hōc ² facilius eīs ¹ persuāsit, quod undique locī
 nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō
 lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Ger-
 mānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī
 5 est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā ³ lacū Lemannō
 et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs
 dīvidit.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ See 193, 18. ² hōc, *on this account*, abl. of cause. ³ Supply *ex parte*.

¹ et—et, *both—and*.



Cornū

LESSON XLII

The Fifth Declension.—Idioms.—Stems of Nouns and Adjectives.

337. GENITIVE SINGULAR.—The fifth declension includes all nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-ĕī*.

338. GENDER.—Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except *diēs*, *day*, which is always masculine in the plural and generally so in the singular.

339.

MODEL NOUNS

Dies, M., <i>day</i> .		Rēs, F., <i>thing</i> . ¹		ENDINGS.	
N.	<i>diēs diēs</i>	<i>rēs rēs</i>		<i>-ēs -ēs</i>	
G.	<i>diēī diērum</i>	<i>reī rērum</i>		<i>-ĕī -ērum</i>	
D.	<i>diēī diēbus</i>	<i>reī rēbus</i>		<i>-ĕī -ēbus</i>	
Ac.	<i>diem diēs</i>	<i>rem rēs</i>		<i>-em -ēs</i>	
Ab.	<i>diē diēbus</i>	<i>rē rēbus</i>		<i>-ē -ēbus</i>	

NOTE.—*e* is short in the genitive and dative singular endings, when a consonant precedes: *fidēī, rēī, spēī*.

340. *Diēs* and *rēs* are the only words having all the plural cases. *Aciēs, seriēs, speciēs, spēs* and a few other words have the nominative and accusative plural.

341.

VOCABULARY

testis, -is, M. or F., *witness*.

spēs, -eī, F., *hope*.

aciēs, -eī, F., (*edge*), *line, rank*, *secundus, -a, -um, second*.
army.

vīgintī, (indeclinable adj.),
twenty.

¹ *Res* should usually be translated by a more definite word than *thing*. The context will suggest a better word, as *fact, circumstance, undertaking, agreement, affair, event*, etc.

diēs, -ēī, M., *day*.
rēs, reī, F., *thing*.¹

aegrē, aegrius, aegerrimē,
with difficulty.

comparō (con + parō), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, arrange, procure*.

cōnficiō (con + faciō), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *accomplish, carry out*.

Synonyms: **aciēs**, *army in battle array*; **āgmen**, *army on the march*; **exercitus**, *army, a trained force*.

TRANSLATE

342. 1. Ob eam rem. 2. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās.² 3. Hīs rēbus adductī sunt. 4. Eius reī populus Rōmānus est testis. 5. Is diēs. 6. Caesar ūnō diē id fēcit, quod Helvētīi diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfecerant. 7. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis³ diem dīcunt.⁴ 8. Tōtā aciē. 9. Prīma ac⁵ secunda aciēs. 10. Ad prīmam nostram aciem. 11. In superiōre aciē. 12. Crassus tertiam aciem mīsīt. 13. Helvētīi eā spē dēiectī sunt.⁶ 14. Dumnorīx summam in spem rēgnī obtinendī² vēnit.⁷ 15. Omnēs rēs ad bellum Helvēticum comparātae erant.

343. 1. A journey of twenty days. 2. This legion marched four days.⁸ 3. The third line (of battle) is longer than the second. 4. The whole line of the enemy was captured (taken). 5. We have great hope⁷ of victory. 6. The Helvetians are induced by the scarcity of everything.⁹ 7. More men will be sent to carry out these plans. (Express in two ways.) 8. It is said (that) the Germans are witnesses of this fact.

¹ See note on page 125.

² See 241.

³ See 279.

⁴ *appoint*.

⁵ *ac* = *atque*.

⁶ *were disappointed*.

⁸ Accusative. What case in English?

⁷ *veniō in spem* (*I come into hope*) = *I have hope* (see 344)

⁹ Write: *of all things*.

344. IDIOMS.—Every language has constructions or expressions peculiar to itself, called *idioms*. Thus, in English we say, *How do you do?* in French, *Comment vous portez-vous?* (*How do you carry yourself?*) Latin has many idioms. For example, it says **equus est Caesarī** (*a horse is to Caesar*) for *Caesar has a horse* (115); **iter faciunt** (*they make a march*) for *they march* (250); **Messālā cōnsule** (*Messala consul*) for *in the consulship of Messala* (277); **novissimum āgmen** (*the newest line*) for *the rear* (297); **in spem venit** (*he comes into hope*) for *he has hope* or *he hopes* (342, 14).

A Latin idiom, of course, must not be translated literally; that is, word for word.

345. STEMS OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.¹—1. The term *base* (22) has been used of nouns and adjectives, to indicate that part of a word which is the same in all the cases (except the nominative of some words of the third declension).

The term *stem* is given to a form which is found by dropping from the genitive plural **-rum** in the first, second and fifth declensions, and **-um** in the third and fourth. It therefore differs from the base of all declined words except some of third declension.

The last letter of the stem is called its *characteristic*, and may be **ā** in the first declension, **o** in the second, **i** or a consonant in the third, **u** in the fourth and **ē** in the fifth.

¹ Section 345 should be read and used for reference.

2.

NOMINATIVE.	BASE.	STEM.	CHARACTER- ISTIC.
porta	port-	portā	ā
amicus	amīc-	amīco- ¹	o ¹
māgnus, -a, -um	māgn-	māgno- (māgnā-)	o (ā)
legiō	legiōn-	legiōn-	n
tempus	tempor-	tempor- (tempos- ²)	r (s)
hostis	host-	hosti-	i
manus	man-	manu-	u
diēs	di-	diē-	ē

3. The declension may be distinguished by the characteristic vowel of the stem as well as by the genitive singular (13). The first, therefore, may be called the **ā**-declension, the second the **o**-, the third the **i**- and consonant, the fourth the **u**-, the fifth the **ē**- declension.

4. The stems of the *third declension* may be classified as follows:

I. Consonant stems, including—

1. Liquid stems (in **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**): cōsul-, hiem-, legiōn-, mercātōr-.

2. Sibilant stems (in **r** for **s**): tempor-.

3. Mute stems (in **b**, **p**, **d**, **t**, **c**, **g**): plēb-, princip-, ped-, milit-, pāc-, rēg-.

II. **i**-stems, including—

1. Nouns in **-is** or **-ēs** (with the same number of

¹ Final **o** of the stem is short.

² Final **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels.

syllables in nominative and genitive singular): **hostis**, **nūbēs**, with stems **hosti-**, **nūbi-**.

2. Neuter nouns in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**: **mare**, **animal**, **calcar**, with stems **mari-**, **animāli-**, **calcāri-**.

III. Mixed stems (consonant in sing. and **i-** in plur.), including—

1. Most nouns in **-ns** or **-rs**: **cliēns**, **cohors**, with stems **client-** (**clienti-**), **cohort-** (**cohorti-**).

2. Most monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** (following a consonant): **pars**, **arx**, with stems **part-** (**parti-**), **arc-** (**arci-**).

5. *Third declension adjectives* of two or three endings (209) have **i-**stems. Those of one ending have consonant stems in the singular and (with exceptions) **i-**stems in the plural. Comparatives have consonant stems (295).

NOMINATIVE.	BASE.	STEM.	CHARACTERISTIC.
ācer	ācr-	ācri-	i
fortis	fort-	forti-	i
potēns	potent-	potent- (potenti-)	t (i)
longior	longiōr-	longiōr-	r

LESSON XLIII

The Future Active Participle.—The Futuro Active Infinitive.—The Reflexive Pronoun *suī*.

346. THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE.—The future active participle is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the supine stem (273).

laudātūrus, **-a**, **-um**, *about to praise*.

vīsūrus, **-a**, **-um**, *about to see*.

rēctūrus, -a, -um, about to rule.
captūrus, -a, -um, about to take.
audītūrus, -a, -um, about to hear.
futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

347. ENDINGS OF THE PARTICIPLES

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	-ns (236)	
<i>Fut.</i>	-ūrus	-ndus (Gerundive, 241)
<i>Perf.</i>		-us (274)

Write and translate all the participles of *dō*, *iubeō*, *iaciō* and *mūniō*.

348. THE FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE.—The future active infinitive is formed by combining *esse* with the future participle.

laudātūrus esse, to be about to praise,—will praise.
visūrus esse, to be about to see,—will see.
rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule,—will rule.
captūrus esse, to be about to take,—will take.
audītūrus esse, to be about to hear,—will hear.
futūrus esse, to be about to be,—will be.

349. When a subject of the future active infinitive is used, the participial form (**-ūrus, -a, -um**) agrees with the subject in gender, number and case.

1. *Lēgātus dīcit Caesarem militēs laudātūrum esse:*
The lieutenant says that Caesar will praise the soldiers.

2. *Lēgātus dīcit militēs Caesarem audītūrōs esse:*
The lieutenant says that the soldiers will hear Caesar.

350. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

SING. OR PLUR.

M., F. OR N.

N. —

G. **sui**, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.D. **sibi**, to or for “ “ “ “Ac. **sē** (**sēsē**), “ “ “ “Ab. **sē** (**sēsē**), from, etc., “ “ “ “

351. (a) **Sui**, a personal pronoun of the third person, is called the *reflexive* pronoun because it refers to the subject of the principal verb for its meaning.

1. **Militēs sē ventūrōs esse dixerunt**: *The soldiers said that they would come.*
2. **Miles dixit sē ventūrum esse**: *The soldier said that he (himself) would come.*

If **eum** had been used instead of **sē**, the soldier would have meant that some other man would come. Compare this distinction with that between the possessive pronoun **suus** and the genitive **ēius** (191).

(b) The reduplicated form **sēsē** is sometimes used for emphasis in the accusative and ablative. **Sēcum** is used instead of **cum sē**, **cum** being an enclitic (7, c).

352. VOCABULARY

biennium, -ī, N. (**annus**), *two years' time, two years.*

sui, refl. pron., *of himself, herself, itself, themselves.*

praeterquam, adv., *except, besides.*

existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *believe, think, estimate.*

combūrō (**con** + **ūrō**), -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum, *burn up, consume.*

recipiō (re + capiō), -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *take back, receive*; with **sē**, *retreat, return, withdraw*.

suscipiō (sub + capiō), -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *take up*; with **sibi**, *take upon one's self, undertake*.

TRANSLATE

353. 1. Caesar Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet. 2. Allobrogēs fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt. 3. Helvētīi sēsē Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrōs¹ vel coāctūrōs¹ exīstimābant. 4. Frūmentum omne, praeterquam (id) quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt. 5. Orgetorix sē suīs cōpiis suōque exercitū rēgna conciliātūrū¹ cōnfīrmat.² 6. Helvētīi sē angustōs finēs habēre dīcunt. 7. Helvētīi suīs finibus eōs prohibent. 8. Helvētīi ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt.³ 9. Orgetorix sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscēpit.⁴ 10. Is suae cīvitatīs imperium obtentūrus erat. 11. Gallī inter sē⁵ differunt. 12. Dumnorix perficit utī obsidēs inter sēsē⁶ dent.

354. 1. The Romans are about to fortify the camp. 2. The enemy have retreated to the nearest towns. 3. The daughter of the horseman says (that) she will call the lieutenant. 4. The Germans did not bring grain with them. 5. The Romans think that the Belgae are conspiring against⁶ them. 6. Having burned up⁷ all the grain, the Helvetians were ready to wage war. 7. The Helvetians persuaded their neighbors to burn up all the grain.

¹ Supply **esse**, which is often omitted.

² *declares*.

³ **Dūcō**

sometimes means *think*.

⁴ **sibi** is an indirect object, with the compound verb **suscēpit** (379).

⁵ **inter sē** in 11 = *from each other*; in 12 = *to each other*.

⁶ **contrā** + the accusative.

⁷ See 278.

LESSON XLIV

Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs.—The Ablative with *ūtor*, etc.

355. DEPONENT VERBS.—Deponent verbs are passive in form but active in meaning.¹ They are conjugated like the passive of other verbs, except that they have the *active* form of the future infinitive. They have also the two active participles, and the gerund and supine (411).

MODEL VERBS

356. PRINCIPAL PARTS (286)

CONJ.	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	
I	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum	urge, exhort, encourage.
II	vereor	verērī	veritus sum	fear.
III	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum	follow.
IV	potior	potirī	potītus sum	get possession of, secure.

These verbs are conjugated in the Appendix (36).

357. SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.—Four verbs have the active form in the present system, but the passive in the perfect system,² with the active meaning throughout. They are, therefore, called *semi-deponent* verbs. These verbs are:

¹ Deponent verbs are so called because they have "laid aside" (*dēpōnō*) their active form and passive meaning.

² The perfect system includes the perfect, pluperfect and* future perfect tenses.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*

gaudeo, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice.*

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed, be used.*

fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust.*

358.

VOCABULARY

iūs, iūris, N., *right, justice.*

urbs, urbis, F., *city.*

cum, conj., *when, while, since, although.*

arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *think, suppose.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *attempt.*

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *urge on, rouse.*

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *roam about.*

exsequor (ex + sequor, 356), *follow out; with iūs, enforce.*

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *depart, set out.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use.*

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *rise, begin.*

359.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. Militēs gladiīs ūtēbantur: *The soldiers were using their swords.*
2. Caesar oppidō potitus est: *Caesar got possession of the town.*

In these sentences notice that the verbs govern the ablative rather than the accusative.

360. RULE XXVI.—*The ablative is used with the deponents ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vēscor and their compounds.*

NOTE.—Potior sometimes takes the genitive. See 380, 10.

TRANSLATE

361. 1. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur. 2. Perfacile est tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. 3. Fīēbat¹ ut Helvētīi minus lātē vagārentur.² 4. Helvētīi sē angustōs finēs habēre arbitrābantur. 5. Ea ad proficīscendum pertinent. 6. Orgetorīx Dumnorīgī persuāsīt ut idem cōnārētur. 7. Cum cīvītās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī³ cōnārētur,⁴ Orgetorīx mortuus est. 8. Helvētīi sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt. 9. Helvētīi persuādēt finitimīs ut eōdem cōnsiliō ūtantur. 10. Helvētīi persuādēt finitimīs ut cum aīs proficīscantur. 11. Helvētīi persuādēt finitimīs ut eōdem ūsī⁵ cōnsiliō cum eīs proficīscantur. 12. Allobrogēs per suōs finēs Helvētīōs ire⁶ nōn passi sunt. 13. Dīcitur⁷ eōs⁸ per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī. 14. Caesar ab urbe proficīscitur. 15. Hortātus⁹ suōs proelium commīsīt.

362. 1. The cavalry will set out from¹⁰ the city. 2. Our forces are attempting to get possession of the camp. 3. The horsemen roamed about as widely (as possible).¹¹ 4. The consul thought he would be¹² ready in ten days. 5. Many brave soldiers died on the march. 6. They feared that the army would get possession of the city. 7. They thought that the army would get possession of the city. 8. Having got possession of the city, they attempted to fortify it.

¹ From *fīō* (390). *Fīēbat* here means *the result was*. ² A subjunctive of *result*; translate like the indicative. ³ A complementary infinitive.

⁴ A subjunctive of *time* (370). ⁵ Perfect participle agreeing with the subject of *proficīscantur*. See 278, Note. ⁶ *to go*. ⁷ *It is said*. ⁸ Subject of *cōnārī*. ⁹ See 278, Note. ¹⁰ *ex*.

¹¹ See 304. ¹² Future infinitive (348).

LESSON XLV—REVIEW

363. 1. How are adverbs formed? 2. How are adverbs compared? 3. What is the gender of nouns of the fourth and fifth declensions? 4. Decline **aciēs**, **cornū**, **domus** and **exercitus**. 5. What is an *idiom*? 6. How is the *stem* of a noun found? 7. How are the participles formed? 8. How is the future active infinitive formed? 9. What is a deponent verb?

364.

Review Vocabulary

biennium	manus	aegrē	arbitror
iūs	occāsus	cum (conj.)	cōnor
plēbs	prīncipātus	praeterquam	hortor
testis	senātus	comparō	vagor
urbs	aciēs	conlocō	vereor
cōspectus	diēs	exīstimō	mорий
cornū	rēs	incitō	patior
cultus	spēs	sustineō	proficīscor
domus	suī	combūrō	sequor
equitātus	acceptus	cōnficiō	exsequor
exercitus	audāx	permittō	ūtor
īmpetus	cōpiōsus	recipiō	orior
lacus	dexter	suscipiō	potior

Mention English words derived from any of the above.

365.

Review Sentences

1. Orgetorīx māximē plēbī acceptus erat. 2. Nostrī cum Helvētiis proelium cupidius committunt. 3. Ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, Caesar aberat. 4. In summō iugō suās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōscripserat, et omnia auxilia conlocāvit.

5. Oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum erat. 6. Caesar equitātum, quī impetum hostium sustinēret, mīsīt. 7. Helvētiī aliud iter habēbant nūllum. 8. Caesar ūnō diē id fēcīt, quod Helvētiī diēbus vīgintī aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. 9. Helvētiī sēsē Allobrogibus vel persuāsūrōs vel coāctūrōs exīstimābant. 10. Frūmentum, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt. 11. Helvētiī ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt. 12. Orgetorīx sibi lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. 13. Dumnorīx perficit utī¹ obsidēs inter sēsē dent. 14. Orgetorīx sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū rēgna conciliātūrū cōnfīrmat. 15. Perfacile est tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. 16. Helvētiī persuādēt finitimīs utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō cum eīs prōficiācantur.

Translate in review the first chapter of Caesar, page 221, and the second chapter as far as **Hīs rēbus**, page 222.

LESSON XLVI

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.—Review of the Subjunctive.—Cum denoting Time.

366. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.

—The perfect subjunctive active is formed by adding the tense-sign **-eri-**² to the perfect stem; the pluperfect, by adding the tense-sign **-isse-**. The perfect is translated by *may have* —, or like the perfect indicative; the pluperfect by *should have* —, *would have* —, or like the pluperfect indicative.

¹ The conjunction **utī** (= **ut**) may be distinguished from **ūtī**, the infinitive of **ūtor**, by the difference in the quantity of the first letter.

² Notice that the tense-sign of the perfect subjunctive active is the same as that of the future perfect indicative.

MODEL VERBS: ACTIVE VOICE

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.
laudāverim	laudāvissem
laudāveris	laudāvissēs
laudāverit	laudāvisset
laudāverimus	laudāvissēmus
laudāveritis	laudāvissētis
laudāverint	laudāvissent
monuerim, etc.	monuissēm, etc.
rēxerim, etc.	rēxissem, etc.
cēperim, etc.	cēpissēm, etc.
audīverim, etc.	audivissēm, etc.
fuerim, etc.	fuissem, etc.

Contractions (265): laudārim, laudārit, etc.; laudāssem, laudāssēs, etc.; audierim, etc.; audissem, etc.

367. PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.—The perfect and pluperfect subjunctive passive are compound tenses. The perfect combines the perfect participle with *sim*; the pluperfect with *essem*. The perfect is translated by *may have been* —, or like the perfect indicative; the pluperfect, by *should have been* —, *would have been* —, or like the pluperfect indicative.

MODEL VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.
laudātus sim, etc.	laudātus essem, etc.
monitus sim, etc.	monitus essem, etc.
rēctus sim, etc.	rēctus essem, etc.
captus sim, etc.	captus essem, etc.
audītus sim, etc.	audītus essem, etc.

Conjugate the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive of *dō, videō, hortor, vereor, sequor* and *potior*.

368. TABLE OF SUBJUNCTIVE ENDINGS

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Pres.</i> -em, -am	-er, -ar
<i>Impf.</i> -rem	-rer
<i>Perf.</i> -erim	-us sim
<i>Plup.</i> -issem	-us essem

369. MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre cōgnōvit:** *When Caesar was in hither Gaul, he learned that the Belgians were conspiring against the Roman people.*
2. **Cum nox finem oppūgnandī fēcisset, Iccius nūntium ad Caesarem mīsit:** *When night had (made) put an end to the attack, Iccius sent a message to Caesar.*

In these sentences **cum** with **esset**, an imperfect, and with **fēcisset**, a pluperfect subjunctive, is used not only to state the time, but also to *describe* the circumstances or situation under which Caesar learned of the conspiracy and Iccius sent a message.

370. RULE XXVII.—**Cum** meaning when, with the imperfect or pluperfect, takes the subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which something occurs.

NOTE.—**Cum** may be followed by any tense of the indicative to denote time (a date) only and not to describe the situation:—**Illō diē cum Helvētīi convēnērunt:** *On that day when the Helvetians assembled.*

371.

VOCABULARY

impedimentum, -ī, N., *hindrance*; pl. *baggage, baggage-train*.
magistrātus, -ūs, M., (*magistracy*), *magistrate*.
dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful*.
mulier, -is, F., *woman*.
quīn, conj., *that, but that*.
adventus, -ūs, M., *arrival, approach*.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten*.

pāreō, **pārere**, **pāruī**, **pāritum**, *obey, submit*.

accēdō (ad + cēdō), -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *approach, advance*.

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, *resolve*; with *sibi mortem*, *commit suicide*.

prēndō, **prēndere**, **prēndī**, **prēnsum**, *seize, grasp*.

NOTE.—The conjunction **quīn** is followed by the subjunctive, after negative expressions of doubt or hindrance. See 372, 4.

TRANSLATE

372. 1. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat ab urbe¹ proficiscī. 2. Haec cum Dīviciācus flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram (manum) prēndit. 3. Cum cīvītās suum iūs exsequī cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est. 4. Nōn est dubium² quīn Orgetorīx sibi mortem cōnscīverit. 5. Diū cum esset pūgnātum,³ impedimentīs castrisque nostrī potītī sunt. 6. Cum Caesar ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.⁴ 7. Cum Helvētīi eum in itinere convēnissent⁵ et flentēs pācem petissent atque Caesar eōs suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. 8. Magistrātus eōs hor-

¹ **Urbs** generally refers to Rome.
² **Nōn est dubium**, *there is no doubt*.

³ **esset pūgnātum**, *fighting had gone on*.

⁴ See 265.

⁵ **Conveniō** when used with an object means *meet*.

tātur ut populī Rōmānī amīcitiam sequantur. 9. Pārēre.
10. Accēdēns. 11. Mātūrandō. 12. Incitandae plēbis causā.

373. 1. When the Belgians were conspiring, Caesar was in the province. 2. When the Helvetians had burned their towns, they set out from their country. 3. When the arrival of Labienus had been learned, the Gauls retreated to the mountain. 4. When he had learned these (things), Caesar ordered the legions and cavalry to be called back. 5. When the lieutenants were approaching the town,¹ the magistrates met² them on the road. 6. He says (that) he will come. 7. We shall use the smallest trumpets. 8. Gaul is much larger than Helvetia.

LESSON XLVII

Compounds of *sum*.—The Dative with Compounds.

374. *Sum* is compounded with certain prepositions, as follows:

absum, *be away, be absent*

adsum, *be near, be present*

dēsum, *be wanting, fail*

insum, *be in*

intersum, *be between, be*

among, be engaged in

obsum, *be against, hinder*

praesum, *be at the head of, be in command of*

prōsum, *be useful, benefit*

subsum, *be under, be near*

supersum, *be over, remain, survive*

375. These compounds are conjugated like *sum*. *Prōsum* has -d- before -e- of the simple verb: *prō-sum*, *prōd-es*, *prōd-est*, *prōd-eram*, *prōd-erō*, *prōd-esse*.

Learn from the Appendix (38) the conjugation of *possum* (*potis, able, + sum*), *posse*, *potuī*, *be able, can*.

¹ Use *ad*. See 372, 6.

² *conveniō*.

376.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Puer pīlum iacere potest:** *The boy can (is able to) throw a javelin.*
2. **Puer pīlum iacere poterat:** *The boy could (was able to) throw a javelin.*
3. **Dumnorīx apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat:** *Dumnorix was most powerful (influential) among the Sequani.*

Possum is generally used with a complementary infinitive (as in sentences 1 and 2). The present tense (1) is best translated *can*, the imperfect (2) *could*.

Plūrimum possum (3) has the meaning *be most powerful, have great influence*.

377.

VOCABULARY

adolēscētia, -ae, F., *youth.*

praestō (*prae* + *stō*, *stand*), **-stāre, -stitī, -stitum,** (*stand before*), *excel, furnish.*

spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hope.*

coepī, *began, have begun.*¹

occurrō (*ob* + *currō*, *run*), **-currere, -currī, -cursum,** *meet, come upon.*

praeficiō (*prae* + *faciō*), **-ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** *put in command.*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can.*

378.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Helvētīī omnibus praestant:** *The Helvetians excel all.*
2. **Dumnorīx equitātūī praeerat:** *Dumnorix was in command of the cavalry.*
3. **Equitēs hostibūs occurrēbant:** *The cavalry met the enemy*

¹ **Coepī** is used only in the perfect system. Verbs that lack some of their forms are called *defective* verbs. See Appendix (43).

Notice that the datives in these sentences are used with verbs compounded with prepositions.

379. RULE XXVIII.—*The dative is used with some verbs compounded with* **ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super.**

TRANSLATE

380. 1. Aberant, aderunt. 2. Sīgnum portāre possum. 3. Oppidum expūgnāre poterimus. 4. Mōns superat. 5. Biennium¹ supererat. 6. Caesar quam māximīs potest itineribus² in Galliam contendit. 7. Quam celerrimē³ potuit. 8. Fīnitimīs bellum īferre⁴ possunt. 9. Nōn est dubium quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint. 10. Tōtīus Galliae⁵ sēsē potīrī posse spērant. 11. Castella commūnit, ut prohibēre hostēs possit. 12. Helvētīi Sēquanīs persuādēre nōn poterant. 13. Haeduī, cum sē suaque⁶ ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt. 14. Omnēs, quī aderant, auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. 15. Eī mūnitiōnī, quam fēc erat, Labiēnum lēgātum praefēc it. 16. Cum Dīviciācus plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā posset, Dumnorīx minimum propter adolēscentiam potuit. 17. Caesar dīcit sē Labiēnum praefectūrum esse. 18. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs, Caesar spērāvit Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum (esse).

381. 1. We can excel. 2. You will be able to see the house. 3. They had begun to retreat to the baggage-train. 4. We shall be able to get possession of the whole province.

¹ Nominative. ² A form of **possum** may be used with **quam** and a superlative (304): **quam māximīs potest itineribus**, (*by the greatest possible marches*), *by forced marches*; that is, by covering more than the usual daily distance. ³ *As quickly as.* ⁴ **īferre** (**in + ferō**), *bring upon, make (war) upon.*

⁵ **Potior** sometimes governs the genitive instead of the ablative (360). ⁶ **sua**, *their property*. How is **suaque** accented?

5. I have not been able to persuade our friends. 6. Labienus had been put-in-command-of the fortification. 7. Galba is-in-command-of the army. 8. He will excel all the rest in valor. 9. The magistrates collected ¹ an army to attack ² the legions.

LESSON XLVIII

**The Numeral *mille*.—The Genitive of the Whole.—
The Accusative of Space and Time.**

382. *Mille*, *thousand*, may be either an adjective or a noun. As an adjective it is not declined: *mille hominēs*. As a noun it has the nominative and accusative singular *mille*, and the plural cases: *mīlia* (*mīllia*), *mīlium*, *mīlibus*, *mīlia*, *mīlibus*. As a noun it is followed by a genitive plural (384).

383.

VOCABULARY

<i>solum</i> , -ī, N., <i>soil</i> .	<i>nihil</i> (indecl.), N., <i>nothing</i> .
<i>lātītūdō</i> , -dinis, F. (<i>lātus</i>), <i>breadth</i> .	<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> , <i>three</i> .
<i>longitūdō</i> , -dinis, F. (<i>longus</i>), <i>length</i> .	<i>eō</i> (<i>is</i>), adv., <i>thither</i> , <i>there</i> .
<i>passus</i> , -ūs, M., <i>pace</i> (about five feet). ³	<i>ad</i> or <i>circiter</i> , adv., with numbers, <i>about</i> .
<i>mille passuum</i> , pl. <i>mīlia passuum</i> , <i>mile</i> .	<i>praeter</i> , prep. with acc., <i>except</i> , <i>beyond</i> .

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *point out*, *explain*.

pateō, *patēre*, *patuī*, —, *extend*.

intermittō (*inter* + *mittō*, 101), *stop*, *discontinue*.

¹ *cōgō*.

² See 199.

³ By *passus* the Romans meant the distance between two successive positions of the *same* foot, which is therefore longer than the English pace.

NOTE.—**Trēs** is declined like the plural of **fortis**: Nom. **trēs, tria**, gen. **trium, trium**, dat. abl. **tribus, tribus**, acc. **trēs (trīs), tria**.

384.

MODELS

1. **Pars militum**: *Part of the soldiers.*
2. **Decem milia passuum**: *Ten thousand (of) paces, ten miles.*
3. **Minus timōris**: *Less (of) fear.*
4. **Ūnus filiōrum**: *One of the sons.*
5. **Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae**: *The bravest of all these are the Belgians.*

In the above expressions the genitive denotes the *whole*, which is modified by a word denoting a *part*. The genitive so used is called the *genitive of the whole*. The word denoting a part may be a noun, pronoun (chiefly interrogative or indefinite), adjective (especially numeral or superlative) or adverb (of quantity, degree or place).

385. RULE XXIX.—*The genitive may denote the whole, depending upon a word denoting a part.*

386.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Ab castrīs oppidum aberat milia passuum octō**: *A town was eight miles away from the camp.*
2. **Rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat**: *He had held the royal power many years.*

How far away was the town? How long had he held the power? The answers to these questions require the accusatives **milia** and **annōs**, the former denoting *extent of space*, the latter *duration of time*. Compare the accusative of time with the ablative of time

(158). The former denotes time *how long*, the latter *time when or within which*.

387. RULE XXX.—*The accusative is used to denote extent of space and duration of time.*

TRANSLATE

388. 1. Multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum ¹ trādūcēbātur. 2. Orgetorix ² ad hominum mīlia decem coēgit. 3. Nūllam partem noctis iter intermissum est. 4. Eō ³ diē hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit. 5. Quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum, eō ⁴ sē recipere coepērunt. 6. Caesar mīlia passuum decem mūrū in longitudinem perdūcit. 7. Allobrogēs dēmōstrant sibi ⁵ praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. ⁶ 8. Finēs Helvētiōrum in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL ⁷ (ducenta quadrāgintā), in lātitudinem CLXXX ⁷ (centum octōgintā) patēbant. 9. Circiter mīlia hominum CXXX ⁷ (centum trīgintā) superfuērunt. 10. Circiter hominum mīlia VI ⁷ (sex) ēius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt. 11. Verentur ut ⁸ habeam satis praesidī. ⁹

389. 1. A great number of horses. 2. The largest of all the rivers. 3. The army marched (for) three days. 4. Caesar fought with ¹⁰ the Gauls (for) eight years. 5. The hill was a thousand feet high. 6. The lake extends a mile in breadth. 7. The forest extended ten miles. 8. The length of the camp will not be much greater than the breadth. 9. When they had built (made) as many ships as possible, they were ready to sail.

¹ Rhēnum depends upon trā- in the verb. ² See 383. ³ Agrees with diē. ⁴ Adverb; see 383. ⁵ See 115. ⁶ Genitive of the whole with nihil, *nothing left*. ⁷ Modifies mīlia. ⁸ What does ut mean here? See 206, c. ⁹ Accent? See 56. ¹⁰ Use a preposition.

LESSON XLIX

The Verb *fīō*.—The Ablative of Cause.—Caesar, I. 2 (concluded).

390. THE PASSIVE OF *faciō*—Except in forms compounded with prepositions (*adficiō*, *cōnficiō*, etc.), *faciō* is not used in the passive of the present system (248). This system is supplied by the irregular verb *fīō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*, *be made, be done, happen, result*. Learn from the Appendix (39) the conjugation of this verb, except the imperative and the perfect and future infinitive. Notice that *-i-* is long except in *fit* and before *-er-*.

391. *Certior*, the comparative of *certus*, *certain, sure*, is used as a predicate adjective in the idioms *faciō certiōrem*, *I inform (make more sure)*, and *fīō certior*, *I am informed (made more sure)*.

1. *Lēgātus Caesarem certiōrem facit montem ab hostibus tenērī*: *A lieutenant informs Caesar that the mountain is held by the enemy.*
2. *Caesar ā lēgātō certior fit montem tenērī*: *Caesar is informed by a lieutenant that the mountain is held.*

Notice (1) that *certior* agrees with the name of the person informed; (2) that the information is expressed by an infinitive clause, just as after a verb of saying (233).

392. MODEL SENTENCE

Spē victōriae fortius pūgnāvērunt: *They fought more bravely because of the hope of victory.*

The ablative *spē* answers the question *Why?* and is called an *ablative of cause*.

NOTE.—Cause is frequently expressed by a *phrase* consisting of **dē** or **ex** with an ablative, or of **propter** or **ob** with an accusative: **Quā dē causā reliquōs Gallōs prāecēdunt; propter timōrem; ob eam rem.**

393. RULE XXXI.—*The ablative may be used to denote cause.*

394.

VOCABULARY

dolor, -ōris, M., (pain), distress. **fidēs, -eī, F., (faith), pledge, protection.**

ōrātiō, ōnis, F., speech, argument. **certus, certain, sure.**

adficiō (ad + ficiō), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, affect; in passive, suffer.

fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done, happen, result.

395. 1. Impetus ā legiōne fiet. 2. Caesar pontem fierī iubet. 3. Helvētiī dē ēius adventū certiorēs factī sunt. 4. Galba certior factus est montēs ā māximā multitudine tenērī. 5. Litterīs Labiēnī Caesar certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre. 6. Haeduī Caesarem certiorē faciunt sēsē nōn facile ab oppidīs hostēs prohibēre. 7. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur. 8. Factum est multīs dē causīs ut hostēs impetum sustinēre nōn possent. 9. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem dant. 10. Id eā dē causā faciēbat. 11. Auxilī causā.¹ 12. Quā² ex parte hominēs³ bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur.⁴ 13. Labiēnus nostrōs expectābat, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret. 14. Lūcium Pīsōnem lēgātum eōdem proeliō (interfēcērant), quō Cassium interfēcērant.

¹ for the sake. ² A relative pronoun at the beginning of a sentence is often best translated by *and* + a demonstrative: **Quā ex parte (= Et ex eā parte), and for that reason.** ³ Not the subject, but an appositive, *being men.*

⁴ **māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur, were greatly distressed.**

396. 1. We shall be informed of¹ the arrival of our friends. 2. They will inform the leader (that) the road is narrow. 3. (Because of) Caesar's arrival the soldiers were fighting more bravely. 4. Having given² a pledge to each other, the kings joined their forces. 5. The army will remain there for-the-sake of grain. 6. The Germans had lived for many years across the Rhine. 7. When we had seen part of the forest, we were informed that it was³ ten miles long.

397. CAESAR, I. 2 (CONCLUDED) : THE EXTENT OF HELVETIA.

Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimīs¹ bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī² cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō³ multitūdine autem⁴ hominum et prō glōriā⁵ bellī atque fortitudinis, angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

NOTES

¹ See 379. ² See 213. ³ *considering*. ⁴ *autem*, conj., *then* again, *furthermore*. ⁵ *glōria*, -ae, F., *fame* (*in*), or *reputation* (*for*).

LESSON L

The Subjunctive of Result.—The Historical Present.
The Sequence of Tenses.

398.

VOCABULARY

dolus, -ī, M., *deceit, trickery*. *amplius*, comp. adv., *more*.
servitūs, -tūtis, F., *slavery*. *paene*, adv., *almost*.

¹ *dē*.

² See 279.

³ Translate by a present form.

perpaucī, -ae, -a, *very few*. tam, adv., *so* (with adj. and
plēnus, -a, -um, *full*. adv.).
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, such*.

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, (*owe*), *ought*.

mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *deserve*.

accidō (ad + cadō, *fall*), -cidere, -cidī, —, *happen, occur*.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, *become accus-*
tomed; in perf., be accustomed.

īstituō (in + statuō), -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, (*put*
in place), *train*.

perficiō (250), *accomplish, bring about, cause*.

399. RESULT CLAUSES.—We have seen that the subjunctive is used in purpose clauses (199) and in some temporal clauses (370). It is also used to express *result* or *consequence* with **ut**, as in the following:—

1. **Mōns altissimus impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent:** *A very high mountain was overhanging, so that very few could hinder.*
2. **Mōns est tam altus ut nōn facile ascendere possīmus:** *The mountain is so high that we cannot easily climb (it).*
3. **Fīēbat ut minus lātē vagārentur.** (395, 7.)
4. **Dumnorīx perficit ut obsidēs dent:** *Dumnorix brings (it) about that they give hostages.*

(a) In each of these complex sentences the subordinate clause is called a *result* clause, or a *consecutive* (consequence) clause. In sentences 1 and 2 the result clause is adverbial (186); in 3 and 4 it is a noun-clause (186), being the subject of **fit** and the object of **perficit**.

(b) Negative result is expressed by **ut nōn**, as in sentence 2. How is negative purpose expressed?

(c) There is often in the principal clause a correlative

word meaning *so, such, so great*, as **ita, sīc, tam, tālis, tantus**. Notice **tam** in sentence 2. A word of this meaning may be understood, as in sentence 1.

(d) A noun-clause with **ut** may be the subject of a verb meaning *(it) happens, (it) follows*; or the object of a verb meaning *accomplish, cause*.

400. RULE XXXII.—*The subjunctive is used with ut or ut nōn to express result.*

401. COMPARISON OF PURPOSE AND RESULT.—A purpose clause expresses the *aim* of the action of the principal clause. It always implies some one's will: *He ran to win (that he might win) the prize.* (The purpose of running.) A result clause expresses a *fact* resulting from the principal statement: *He ran so swiftly that he won the prize.* (The result of running.)

402. THE HISTORICAL PRESENT.—The present tense is frequently used to state or describe a *past* event more vividly. It is then called the *historical present*, and is generally to be translated by the English past: **Helvētīi oppida incendunt**: *The Helvetians burned the towns.*

403. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—Tenses are either primary or secondary. In the indicative the primary tenses are the present, the future and the future perfect; the secondary are the imperfect, the perfect (historical, 176) and the pluperfect. In the subjunctive the primary tenses are the present and the perfect; the secondary are the imperfect and the pluperfect. The historical present (402) may be used as a secondary tense, and the present perfect (176) as a primary.

404.

MODEL SENTENCES

PRES.	Veniō ut videam: <i>I am coming to see (that I may see).</i>
PRES. PERF.	Vēnī ut videam: <i>I have come to see.</i>
FUT.	Veniam ut videam: <i>I shall come to see.</i>
FUT. PERF.	Vēnerō ut videam: <i>I shall have come to see.</i>
IMPF.	Veniēbam ut vidērem: <i>I was coming to see (that I might see).</i>
HIST. PERF.	Vēnī ut vidērem: <i>I came to see.</i>
PLUP.	Vēneram ut vidērem: <i>I had come to see.</i>

In these complex sentences notice that a primary tense in the principal clause is followed by the present in the subordinate, and that a secondary tense is followed by the imperfect.

405. RULE XXXIII.—*In complex sentences primary tenses follow primary, and secondary follow secondary.*

This is called the rule for the *sequence of tenses*(**sequor, follow**).

TRANSLATE

406. 1. Tanta est altitūdō flūminis ut āgmen trānsīre¹ nōn possit. 2. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna. 3. Nostrī nāvēs² hostium sīc expūgnāvērunt ut perpaucae ad terram pervenīrent. 4. Ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō. 5. Ita Helvētiī ā māiōribus suis īnstitūtī sunt utī obsidēs³ accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērīnt. 6. Ita dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs³ nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerīnt. 7. Ita diēs⁴ circiter quīndecim⁵ iter fēcērunt

¹ to cross.² Accusative.³ The Roman army.⁴ See 387.⁵ quīndecim = quīnque + decem.

utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnīs¹ aut sēnīs mīlibus² passuum interest. 8. Nōn abest suspīciō quīn Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem fēcerit.³

407. 1. It happens that the river is deep. 2. The javelin is so heavy that it cannot easily be thrown. 3. So great was their valor that they always conquered. 4. There is no doubt that he is the bravest of the boys. 5. Very few soldiers used trickery.³ 6. They had been advised to come⁴ as quickly as possible. 7. The consul will praise the deserving.⁵ 8. We ought not to devastate the fields. 9. Having devastated the fields, they carried off the children into slavery.

LESSON LI—REVIEW

CAESAR, I. 3 (BEGUN)

408. 1. Review the conjugation of the subjunctive mood (368). 2. Conjugate **fiō** and **possum**. 3. Decline **mille** and **trēs**. 4. With what parts of speech is the genitive of the whole used? 5. With what compound verbs is the dative used? 6. By what cases is time expressed, and what is the difference in meaning? 7. What is the rule for **cum** (*when*)? 8. What is the difference between a purpose clause and a result clause? 9. What is the historical present? 10. What is the rule for the sequence of tenses?

¹ quīnī, -ae, -a, *five* (each); sēnī, -ae, -a, *six* (each); distributive numeral adjectives, denoting here how many miles each day. ² See 303.

³ What case (360)?

⁴ What mood and tense (405)?

⁵ Pres. participle, used as noun.

⁶ Translate like perf. indicative.

409.

Review Vocabulary

adolēscētia	nihil	propter	adficiō
dolus	certus	autem	coepī
dolor	dubius	quīn	cōnsciscō
impedimentum	perpaucī	dēmōnstrō	cōnsuēscō
solum	plēnus	mātūrō	fīō
lātitudō	tantus	praestō	īnstituō
longitudō	mīlle	spērō	intermittō
mulier	trēs	dēbeō	occurrō
ōrātiō	amplius	mereor	possum
servitūs	circiter	pāreō	praefficiō
adventus	eō (adv.)	pateō	prēndō
magistrātus	paene	accēdō	
passus	tam	accidō	
fidēs	praeter		

Mention some English words derived from these Latin words.

Translate in review sections 372, 380, 388, 395, 406.

410. CAESAR, I. 3 (BEGUN): THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO LEAVE THEIR COUNTRY

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre,¹ iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere,¹ sēmentēs quam māximās facere,¹
 5 ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amīcitiam cōfirmāre.¹ Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in² tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant.³

NOTES

¹ See 230.² *for*.³ *fix*, historical present.

LESSON LII

The Supine and its Uses.—Expressions of Purpose.—Caesar, I. 3 (continued).

411. THE SUPINE.—The supine has been given as the fourth of the principal parts of verbs (117). It is a verbal noun having two forms, an accusative in **-um** and an ablative in **-ū**.

412. The supine in **-um** is used—

(1) With verbs of *motion*, to express purpose. **Oppugnātum patriam nostram veniunt:** *They come to attack our country.*

(2) With **irī**,¹ to form the future passive infinitive: **laudātum irī**, *to be about to be praised*. This infinitive seldom occurs.

413. The supine in **-ū** is used chiefly as an ablative of specification (144) with adjectives meaning *easy, good, strange* or the opposite. Caesar uses only **factū**. **Difficile factū est.** *It is hard to do (with respect to the doing).*

414. PURPOSE.—In Latin prose four forms of the verb are used to express purpose:

(1) The subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, or a relative.

(2) The gerund, } with **ad** or **causā** (240, 242).

(3) The gerundive, }

(4) The supine (412).

Mittunt Orgetorīgem	{	ut (or quī) pācem cōfirmet. ad pācem cōfirmandam. pācis cōfirmandae causā. pācem cōfirmātum.
---------------------	---	---

¹ Present passive infinitive of **eō**, *go* (435).

415.

VOCABULARY

perfacilis, -e (per + facilis), *very easy*.

propinquus, -a, -um (prope), *near*; plur. as noun, *relatives*.

quō (= ut eō), conj. with comparatives, (*that thereby*), *that, in order that*.

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum (frūmentum), *gather grain*.

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *congratulate*.

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *ravage, devastate*.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *show, prove*.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, ask for*.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, (*veil one's self*), *marry*;

conlocō (326) nūptum, *give in marriage*.

queror, querī, questus sum, *complain*.

TRANSLATE

416. 1. Perfacile factū. 2. Est perfacile factū. 3. Id¹ perfacile factū esse probat. 4. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta² perficere.³ 5. Haeduī lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Dumnorīx suās propinquās nūptum conlocāvit. 7. Prīncipēs civitātum ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnerunt. 8. Haeduī veniēbant questum quod Harūdēs finēs eōrum populārentur. 9. Ūna legiō frūmentātum missa erat. 10. Māgna pars equitātūs frūmentandī causā missa est. 11. Castra mūnīre coepērunt, quō facilius hostium impetūs sustinēre possent. 12. Castra movērī iubet, quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspīciōnem. 13. Ad haec cōgnōscenda Labiēnum esse idōneum arbitrabātur.

417. 1. I shall send men to⁴ ask for aid. 2. The boy's friends came to⁴ congratulate him. 3. He built (made) forts that⁵ he might defend the place with a smaller number

¹ Subject of *esse*.

² Object of *perficere*.

³ Use a relative.

⁴ Translate in two ways.

⁵ Use *quō*.

of soldiers. 4. We shall be ready to² sail. 5. You thought three ships would be¹ enough to² transport the animals. 6. The mountain was so high that we could not climb it in one day.

418. CAESAR, I. 3 (CONTINUED): ORGETORIX CONSPIRES WITH CASTICUS AND DUMNORIX

Ad eas res cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur.³ Is sibi⁴ lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscepit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō,⁵ Sēquanō,⁵ cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs⁶ obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus⁷ appellātus erat, ut rēg- 5 num in cīvitāte suā occupāret,⁸ quod pater ante¹ habuerat; itemque² Dumnorīgī⁹ Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciāci, quī eō tēpore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac māmimē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. 10

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ ante, adv., *before*.

² item, adv., *in the same way, also*.

³ dēligō (dē + legō), -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *choose, select*. See 402.

⁴ See 379.

⁵ See 135.

⁶ See 387.

⁷ See 95.

⁸ See

206.

⁹ With persuādet, line 9.

LESSON LIII

The Perfect Infinitive.—Review of the Infinitive.—The Perfect and Supine Systems.—Caesar, I. 3 (concluded).

419. THE PERFECT INFINITIVE.—The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding -isse to the perfect stem; the perfect passive, by combining esse with the perfect participle.

¹ See 348.

² Use ad, See 242.

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
laudāvisse, <i>to have praised.</i>	laudātus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to have been praised.</i>
monuisse, <i>to have advised.</i>	monitus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to have been advised.</i>
rēxisse, <i>to have ruled.</i>	rēctus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to have been ruled.</i>
cēpisse, <i>to have taken.</i>	captus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to have been taken.</i>
audīvisse, <i>to have heard.</i>	audītus (-a, -um) esse, <i>to have been heard.</i>

NOTE.—The -v- of the perfect stem may be dropped and the vowels contracted: **laudāsse, audīsse.** See 265.

420. TABLE OF INFINITIVE ENDINGS

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Pres.</i> -re (228)	-rī (-ī)
<i>Perf.*</i> -isse	-us esse
<i>Fut.</i> -ūrus esse (348)	-um irī (412)

Write all the infinitives of **dō, videō, vincō.** Review the uses of the infinitive (230–232).

421. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

I. The present infinitive denotes the *same* time as the principal verb:

1. **Dīcit sē laudāre:** *He says that he praises (is praising).*
2. **Dīxit sē laudāre:** *He said that he praised (was praising).*

II. The perfect infinitive denotes time *before* that of the principal verb:

1. **Dicit sē laudāvisse:** *He says that he praised (has praised).*
2. **Dixit sē laudāvisse:** *He said that he had praised.*

III. The future infinitive denotes time *after* that of the principal verb:

1. **Dicit sē laudātūrum esse:** *He says that he will praise.*
2. **Dixit sē laudātūrum esse:** *He said that he would praise.*

422.

VOCABULARY

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *be silent, keep silent.*

cōnsidō (con + sidō), -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, (*sit down*), *encamp.*

largior, -irī, -itus sum, *give lavishly, bribe.*

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, *find out, discover.*

TRANSLATE

423. 1. Nūntiāmus oppidum esse mūnītum. 2. Respondērunt pācem cōfīrmātam esse. 3. Dīxērunt sē ā patribus didicisse. 4. Dīvicō respondit Helvētiōs ā suīs māiōribus īnstitūtōs esse. 5. Liscus dīcit sē ob eam cau-
sam tacuisse. 6. Dīxistī hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse. 7. Caesar certior factus est trēs partēs¹ cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen² trādūxisse. 8. Caesar reperit Dumnorīgem facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās³ comparāsse. 9. Reperiēbat initium fugae equitum factum esse ā Dumnorīge. 10. Cōnsidius dīcit id sē ā Gallicīs armīs cōgnōvisse. 11. Cōgnōvit montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse. 12. Persuāsit eīs ut auxilium rogārent. 13. Cum cōnsēdisent, imperātor eam legiōnem laudāvit quae fuerat fortissima.

¹ Object of -dūxisse.
governed by trā- (trāns-).

² "Secondary object" of trādūxisse, gov-

³ Agrees with facultātēs.

424. 1. They are moving the tower.¹ 2. He discovers that they are moving the tower. 3. He discovers that the tower is being moved. 4. He discovered that the tower had been moved. 5. We heard that they had been in Gallia. 6. The lieutenant says he will report the victory. 7. I reported that the soldiers would fortify the town. 8. I reported that the soldiers had fortified the town.

425. THE PERFECT SYSTEM.—The perfect system includes all forms of the verb derived from the perfect stem. The forms are all active. For **laudō** they are:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Perfect.</i>	laudāv-ī	laudāv-erim	laudāv-isse
<i>Pluperf.</i>	laudāv-eram	laudāv-issem	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	laudāv-erō		

426. THE SUPINE SYSTEM.—The supine system includes all forms of the verb derived from the supine stem. The forms are all passive, except the future active infinitive, future active participle and the supine. For **laudō** the system is:

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Perfect.</i>	laudāt-us sum	laudāt-us sim
<i>Pluperf.</i>	laudāt-us eram	laudāt-us essem
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	laudāt-us erō	
	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Future.</i>	laudāt-ūrus esse	laudāt-ūrus
	laudāt-um irī	
<i>Perfect.</i>	laudāt-us esse	laudāt-us
	SUPINE. laudāt-um	

¹ See 310.

427. CAESAR, I. 3 (CONCLUDED): THE ARGUMENT OF ORGETORIX

Perfacile factū esse illīs ² probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus ³ esset: nōn esse ⁴ dubium quā ⁵ tōtīus Galliae ⁶ plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum ⁷ cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter ⁵ sē fidem, et iūsiūrandum ¹ dant, et rēgnō occupātō ⁸ per trēs ⁹ pōtentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae ¹⁰ sēsē potirī posse spērant.

NOTES

- ¹ iūsiūrandum (iūs + iūrandum), iūrisiūrandī, N., *oath* (a compound noun). ² See 63. ³ See 346. ⁴ See 231. ⁵ See 371, Note. ⁶ See 385. ⁷ See 348. ⁸ See 279. ⁹ The Helvetii, Haedui and Sequani. ¹⁰ See 360, note.



Gallic Soldier

LESSON LIV

Impersonal Verbs.—Noun-Clauses.—Caesar, I. 4
(begun).

428. IMPERSONAL VERBS.—An *impersonal* verb is one that has no personal subject, and hence is used in the third person singular only. It is often introduced in English by the expletive *it*: *it rains, it happens*. In Latin, impersonal verbs include (besides a few others)—

1. Verbs taking a phrase or a clause as their subject.

Accidit ut esset lūna plēna: *It happened that there was full moon.*

2. Intransitive verbs used in the third singular passive:

Pūgnātur: *There is fighting (fighting goes on).*

Impersonal verbs are found in the indicative, subjunctive, and present and perfect infinitive.

429. Among the verbs used impersonally are:

accēdit, accēdere, accessit, *it is added.*

accidit, accidere, accidit, *it happens.*

fit, fierī, factum est, *it happens, it results.*

licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is allowed.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *it is necessary.*

pūgnātur, pūgnārī, pūgnātum est, *there is fighting.*

430. NOUN-CLAUSES.—A noun-clause (186) may be the subject or object of a verb, an appositive or a predicate nominative (or accusative). It may be expressed in the following ways—

1. By an indicative, introduced by the conjunction **quod** (*that, the fact that*).

Accēdēbat quod flūmen erat lātum: *There was added the fact that the river was broad.*

2. By a subjunctive introduced by **ut, nē, quīn**, etc., or an interrogative word (Review 206; 371, Note; 399).

Flēbat ut flūmen esset lātum: *It happened that the river was broad.*

3. By an infinitive with a subject-accusative (231).

Dīcit flūmen esse lātum: *He says that the river is broad.*

431.

VOCABULARY

poena, -ae, F., punishment. **mōs, mōris, M., custom.**

ignis, ignis, M., fire. **ascēsus, -ūs, M., ascent.**

cremō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, burn; with ignī, burn to death.

TRANSLATE

432. 1. Poenam sequī oportet. 2. Poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur.¹ 3. Frūmentum militibus dare oportēbit. 4. Renūtiātum est ascēsum montis facilem esse. 5. Diū atque ācritēr pūgnātum est. 6. Ab horā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum erat. 7. Helvētiīs² est in animō iter facere. 8. Lēgātī dīcunt sibi³ esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere. 9. Id³ eīs facere licet. 10. Lēgātī rogant ut id sibi facere liceat. 11. Mōre⁴ Caesaris. 12. Mōribus Helvētiōrum. 13. Caesar dīcit sē mōre populī Rōmānī nōn posse iter dare. 14. Accēdēbat⁵ quōd Gallī Rōmānōs oppida occupāre cōnārī exīstimābant. 15. Verētur nē hōc faciās. 16. Verētur ut hōc faciās.

433. 1. It is necessary (for) the traders to come to Gaul. 2. It happened that the sailors were about to make⁶ a conspiracy. 3. We think (that) he was not burned to

¹ ut—cremārētur, in apposition with poenam.

² See 115.

³ Object of facere.

⁴ According to the custom.

⁵ It was

added = there was an additional reason.

⁶ See 346.

death. 4. There is no doubt that the ascent of the mountain is easy. 5. He ordered ¹ them to do this. 6. He persuaded them to do this. 7. Having bought up carts and pack-animals they were ready to set out.²

434. CAESAR, I. 4 (BEGUN): THE CONSPIRACY IS DISCOVERED

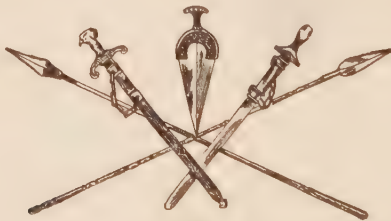
Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorīgem ex vinculis ¹ causam ² dicere coēgērunt. Damnātum ³ poenam sequi oportēbat ut igni cremārētur.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ *vinculum, -ī, N., chain; ex vinculis, in chains.*

² *causam dicere, to plead (his) cause, stand trial.*

³ *damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, condemn; damnātum (agreeing with eum, the supplied object of sequi) has a conditional force, if condemned.*



Gallic Weapons

LESSON LV

The Verb *eō*.—The Ablative of Accompaniment.—
Caesar, I. 4 (concluded).

435. IRREGULAR VERBS.—*Sum, eō, ferō, fiō, volō* and their compounds are called *irregular* verbs. Review *sum* and *fiō* (Appendix, 37 and 39). Learn from the

¹ *iubeō*. See 233.

² *proficiscor*. See 239.

Appendix (40) the conjugation of **eō, ire, ivi, itum, go**.
Stems: **i-, iv-, it-**.

436. The passive of **eō** is used only impersonally; for the use of **iri**, see 412, 2. The compounds **ad-eō** and **trāns-eō** may be transitive in meaning, and therefore may be conjugated in the passive: **adeor, adiris, adi-tur, adimur, adiminī, adeuntur**, etc.

437.

VOCABULARY

vādum, -ī, N., ford; vadō, by Nōricus, -a, -um, Norican.
fording. nōndum, adv., not yet.

eō, ire, ivi, itum, go.

exeō (ex + eō), go out.

subeō (sub + eō), go under, undergo.

trānseō (trāns + eō), go across, cross.

438.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Helvētiī cum omnibus cōpiīs exiērunt:** *The Helvetians went out with all their forces.*
2. **Ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs vērērunt:** *They came to Caesar's camp with all their forces.*
3. **Caesar cum equitibus centum pervēnit:** *Caesar arrived with a hundred horsemen.*

In these sentences the **ablatives** with **cum** denote *accompaniment*, answering the question *With whom?* or *With what?* **Cum** is sometimes omitted with military expressions (sentence 2), unless a numeral is used (sentence 3).

439. RULE XXXIV.—*The ablative with cum is used to denote accompaniment.*

TRANSLATE

440. 1. Cum Germānīs contendunt. 2. Caesar cum quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit.¹ 3. Bōiī in agrum Nōri-cum trānsierant. 4. Rhodanus nōnnūllis locīs vadō trānsitur. 5. Helvētiī id, quod cōstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant.² 6. Parātī ad omnia perīcula subeunda erant. 7. Helvētiī Caesare invītō³ trānsire nōn cōnābuntur. 8. Dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem Helvētiōrum pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. 9. Hīc pāgus, cum domō⁴ exisset, Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat. 10. Ariovistus dīxit sē sine exercitū in Galliam venīre nōn audēre.⁵

441. 1. They are going to the forest. 2. They are giving hostages to the king.⁶ 3. Ariovistus will come with a large army. 4. Ariovistus says he will come with a large army. 5. It is easy to cross the river by fording. 6. We urged⁷ the sailors to go⁸ with Cassius. 7. The sailor's friends congratulated him (as he was) going⁹ to the ship.

442. Review chapters 2 and 3, pages 221–223.

CAESAR, I. 4 (CONCLUDED): THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX

Diē⁵ cōstitutā causae dictiōnis² Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad⁶ hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs¹ obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem³ 5 condūxit; per eōs nē⁷ causam dīceret sē ēripuit.⁴

Cum cīvītās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque

¹ *endeavors.*² See 430.³ See 279.⁴ See 332.⁵ See 357.⁶ Is the word for *king* to be in the same case here as the word for *forest* in sentence 1?⁷ *hortor.*⁸ See 206.⁹ Present participle.

abest suspīciō, ut ⁸ Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

10

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ cliēns, -entis, M., *vassal, client*.

² dictiō, -ōnis, F., *a speaking*; *dictiōnis causae*, (*of the pleading of the case*), *for the trial*.

³ eōdem (īdem), adv., *to the same place*.

⁴ ēripiō (ē + rapiō), -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *snatch away*; with sē, etc. —nē, *save one's self from* —.

⁶ See 159. ⁶ Adverb (383). ⁷ See 199. ⁸ *as*, with the indicative.

LESSON LVI

The Verb *ferō*.—Expressions of Place.—The Ablative of Separation.—Caesar, I. 5 (begun).

443. Learn from the Appendix (41) the conjugation, active and passive (except the imperative), of *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *bear*, *carry*. Stems: *fer-*, *tul-*, *lāt-*. Translate each form.

444.

VOCABULARY

cibāria, -ōrum, N., *food*; with *molita*, *meal*.

reditiō, -ōnis, F. (*redeō*), *return*.

rūs, *rūris*, N., *country* (as opposed to the city).

cōnferō (con + *ferō*), *bring together*; with *sē*, (*betake one's self*), *flee*.

efferō (ex + *ferō*), *efferre*, *extulī*, *ēlātum*, *carry out*, *carry away*.

inferō (in + *ferō*), *bring in*, *make or bring* — upon.
molō, -ere, -uī, -itum, *grind*.

redeō (red + *eō*, 435), *go back*, *return*.

tollō, *tollere*, *sustulī*, *sublātum*, (*raise*), *take away*.

445.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. Aquitānia ad Hispāniam pertinet (272).
2. Rōmam vēnit: *He came to Rome.*
3. Domum iērunt: *They went home.*
4. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine pertinet (272).
5. Rōmā profectus est: *He departed from Rome.*
6. Hīs itineribus domō exiērunt: *By these roads they went forth from home.*
7. Ea cīvītās est in Prōvinciā: *That tribe is in the Province.*
8. Caesar Rōmae ¹ nōn remānsit: *Caesar did not remain at Rome.*
9. Domī ¹ remānsērunt: *They remained at home.*

(a) In sentence 1 the place *to* which is expressed by the accusative case with the preposition **ad**. But the preposition is omitted with the names of towns, small islands, **domus** and **rūs**, as in 2 and 3.

(b) In sentence 4 the place *from* which is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ā**. But the preposition is omitted with the names of towns, small islands, **domus** and **rūs**, as in 5 and 6.

(c) In sentence 7 the place *where* (*in, on or at* which) is expressed by the ablative with **in**. But the locative case ² is used instead of the ablative in the *singular* of names of towns of the first, second and sometimes third declension, and in **domī**, *at home*, **rūrī**, *in the country*, and a few other words. The ending of the locative is **-ae** for the first declension, and **-ī** for the second and third. See sentences 8 and 9.

¹ Locative case. See 445, 4.

² See Introduction (10).

446. RULE XXXV.—*Place to which is expressed by the accusative with ad or in; place from which, by the ablative with ab, dē or ex; place where, by the ablative, generally with in, or by the locative.*

447.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. Belgae ā cultū prōvinciae absunt (261).
2. Helvētiōs itinere prohibuit: *He kept the Helvetians from marching.*

In these sentences the ablatives denote *separation*. This use of the ablative is found with verbs (or kindred adjectives) meaning *keep away, deprive, free, be absent, be without, need*. After verbs meaning *free, deprive or need*, a preposition is regularly not used. After verbs compounded with **ab, dē or ex**, one of these prepositions is repeated with the ablative.

448. RULE XXXVI.—*The ablative, with or without a preposition, is used to express separation.*

NOTE.—The first use of the ablative was to express separation. Observe the derivation of the word *ablative*, from **ab, from**, and the supine stem of **ferō, bear**.

TRANSLATE

449. 1. Tēla cōferuntur. 2. Helvētiī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt. 3. Haeduī frūmentum nōn cōferent, quod ¹ dēbent. 4. Hostēs ad impedīmenta sē contulērunt. 5. Eī, quī flūmen trānsierant, suīs ² auxiliū ferre nōn potuērunt. 6. Domum reditiōnis spēs sub

¹ Pronoun.² Indirect object.

lāta est. 7. Fīnitimīs¹ bellum īferunt. 8. Ea pars cīvitatīs Helvētiaē calamitātem populō¹ Rōmānō intulerat. 9. Mīles molita cibaria sibi² domō³ effert. 10. Molita cibaria sibi mīlitēs⁴ domō efferre iubent. 11. Caesar Bibracte⁵ īvit. 12. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, erat numerus mīlium⁶ centum et decem. 13. Dīviciācus plūrimum domī et in reliquā Galliā potuit. 14. Mīlitēs ā proeliō continēbantur. 15. Caesar Galliam omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā dēfendere potest.

450. 1. I shall go to Germany. 2. I shall go to Geneva. 3. We shall go home. 4. He went out of the camp. 5. He went from Geneva. 6. They live at Geneva.⁷ 7. They lived in Germany. 8. They will live in the country. 9. The hope of return will be taken away. 10. A disaster had been brought upon the Roman people. 11. The soldiers were assisting (carrying aid to) their⁸ (comrades). 12. Grain was brought together by the Haedui. 13. They will grind the grain and carry it from home with them.

451. CAESAR, CHAPTER I. 5 (BEGUN): THE HELVETII CONTINUE THEIR PREPARATIONS

Post ēius mortem nihilō⁹ minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut¹⁰ ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam¹¹ sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō¹² ad duodecim,¹³ vicōs ad 5 quadringentōs,¹⁴ reliqua prīvāta¹⁵ aedificia¹⁶ incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut—domum reditiōnis spē¹⁷ sublātā—parātiorēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium

¹ See 379.

² *for himself.*

³ See 332.

⁴ Subject of

efferre.

⁵ See 326.

⁶ Predicate genitive,

⁷ See

445, c.

⁸ Indirect object.

mēnsium² molita cibāria sibi quemque³ domō efferre iubent.

10

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ aedificium, -ī, N., *building*. ² mēnsis, -is, M., *month*. ³ quemque, acc. of indefinite pronoun, *each one*. ⁴ privātus, -a, -um, *private*.
⁵ duodecim = duo + decem. ⁶ quadringentī, -ae, -a, *four hundred*.
⁷ nihilō, abl. as adv., *none (by nothing)*; nihilō minus, *nevertheless*.

⁸ See 430.⁹ *at length*.¹⁰ See 144.¹¹ See 279.

LESSON LVII—REVIEW

452. CAESAR, I. 5 (CONCLUDED)

1. What are the uses of the supine? 2. Mention four ways of expressing purpose. 3. What are the infinitive endings? 4. How are the tenses of the infinitive used? 5. What is an impersonal verb? 6. Name some verbs used impersonally. 7. How may a noun-clause be expressed? 8. How is place expressed? 9. Accompaniment? 10. Separation? Conjugate **eō** and **ferō**.

453.

Review Vocabulary

poena	reditiō	populor	largior
aedificium	ascēsus	probō	reperiō
cibāria	privātus	rogō	eō
iūsiurandum	propinquus	licet	exeō
vadum	perfacilis	oportet	redeō
vinculum	quō (conj.)	taceō	subeō
cliēs	item	cōnsidō	trānseō
dictiō	nōndum	ēripiō	ferō
ignis	cremō	molō	cōnferō
mēnsis	frūmentor	queror	efferō
mōs	grātulor	tollō	īnferō

Mention some English derivatives.

454. Translate in review the sentences of 416, 423, 432, 440 and 449.

455. CAESAR, CHAPTER I. 5 (CONCLUDED): THE ALLIES OF THE HELVETII

Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs utī eōdem ūsī⁵ cōnsiliō, oppidīs⁶ suīs vicisque exūstīs,⁴ ūnā² cum eīs proficiscantur; Bōiōsque,⁷ quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs¹ sibi adsciscunt.³

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ socius, -i, M., ally.

² ūnā (ūnus), adv., together.

³ adsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, attach, unite.

⁴ exūrō (ex + ūrō), -ūrere, -ussī, -ūstum, burn up.

⁵ See 360. ⁶ See 279. ⁷ Bōiōs—adsciscunt, having received into their number the Boii, who, etc., they unite with them as allies.

LESSON LVIII

Numeral Adjectives.—Clauses of Characteristic.—Caesar, I. 6 (begun).

456. CLASSES OF NUMERALS.—There are three classes of numeral adjectives: *cardinal*, denoting how many; *ordinal*, denoting which one of a series; *distributive*, denoting how many at a time.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.
ūnus, one,	prīmus, first,	singulī, one by one, one each.
duo, two,	secundus, second,	bīnī, two each.
trēs, three,	tertius, third,	ternī, three each.
quattuor, four,	quārtus, fourth,	quaternī, four each.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.
quīnque , <i>five</i> ,	quīntus , <i>fifth</i> ,	quīnī , <i>five each</i> .
sex , <i>six</i> ,	sextus , <i>sixth</i> ,	sēnī , <i>six each</i> .
septem , <i>seven</i> ,	septimus , <i>seventh</i> ,	septēnī , <i>seven each</i> .
octō , <i>eight</i> ,	octāvus , <i>eighth</i> ,	octōnī , <i>eight each</i> .
novem , <i>nine</i> ,	nōnus , <i>ninth</i> ,	novēnī , <i>nine each</i> .
decem , <i>ten</i> ,	decimus , <i>tenth</i> ,	dēnī , <i>ten each</i> .

Other numerals are given in the Appendix (17).

457. DECLENSION OF NUMERALS.—Ordinals are declined like the singular of **māgnus**; distributives, like the plural of **māgnus**. The only cardinals declined are **ūnus** (177), **duo**, **trēs** (383), the hundreds above **centum** and the plural of **mille** (382). Learn the declension of **duo** in the Appendix (14).

458.

VOCABULARY

famēs , famis , F., <i>hunger</i> .	quīngentī , -ae, -a, <i>five hundred</i> .
tempestās , -tātis, F., (<i>season</i>), <i>weather, storm</i> .	quā , rel. adv., <i>by which, where</i> .
nōnāgintā , <i>ninety</i> .	vix , adv., <i>with difficulty, scarcely</i> .

tolerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *endure*; with **famem**, *keep from starving*.

459. CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—A clause beginning with a relative pronoun, adjective or adverb is a relative clause. A relative clause which describes or characterizes an antecedent is called a clause of *description* or *characteristic*. The verb in such a clause is in the subjunctive when the antecedent is incomplete in itself, or when the clause states what *kind* of

person or thing the antecedent is. A common use of the clause of characteristic is after such phrases as **est quī, sunt quī**.

1. **Sunt multī quī dīcant:** *There are many who say.*
2. **Erant itinera duo quibus itineribus¹ Helvētīi domō exīre possent:** *There were two roads by which the Helvetians could go from home.*

Sentence 1 means: *There are many of the kind that say, not many who actually say.* The latter would require the indicative **quī dicunt**. So sentence 2 tells what *kind* of roads there were.

TRANSLATE

460. 1. Quīnque diēs. 2. Quīntus diēs. 3. Diē septimō
4. Quattuor pāgī. 5. Ad numerum quattuor¹ mīlium.
6. Ab quīngentīs equitibus. 7. Mīlitēs decimae legiōnis.
8. Nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus² passuum. 9. Cum
duābus legiōnibus. 10. Erat ūnum iter quā³ vix singulī
carrī dūcerentur. 11. Diem dīcunt⁴ quā⁵ diē ad rīpam
Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. 12. Domī nihil erat, quō⁶
famem tolerārent. 13. Tempestās idōnea ad nāvigandum.
14. Accidit ut essent māgnae tempestātēs. 15. Secūtae
sunt tempestātēs, quae nostrōs in castrīs continērent.
16. Eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, fuit numerus mīlium⁷
nōnāgintā duōrum.

461. 1. A hundred men. 2. Two hundred men, two hundred ships, two hundred animals. 3. Of two roads. 4. Of three houses. 5. Of one sword. 6. On the sixth day. 7. In the eighth month. 8. In the ninth year. 9. There

¹ The antecedent of a relative is sometimes repeated in the relative clause.

² See 303.

³ Rel. adv.

⁴ *appoint.*

⁵ Rel. adj.

⁶ Rel. pron.

⁷ Predicate genitive.

is no ship in which the soldiers can cross. 10. There are some¹ who say (that) the road will be too² narrow. 11. The seventh legion was five miles away.³ 12. Caesar was informed that the legion was five miles away. 13. When they were two miles away, they saw the enemy's line (of battle).

462. CAESAR, I. 6 (BEGUN): THE TWO ROADS FROM HELVETIA

Erant omnīnō² itinera duo quibus itineribus domō
exīre possent⁴: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et diffi-



JUNCTION OF THE JURA MOUNTAINS AND THE RHONE
(*Pas de l'Écluse*)

cile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā
singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem³ altissimus im-
pendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum⁵

¹ nōnnūllī.

² See 296.

³ absum.

per prōvinciam nostram, multō ⁵ facilius atque expeditius,¹ propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis locis ⁶ vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum
 10 Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus ⁷ Genāva.⁸

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ **expeditus**, -a, -um, *free from obstacles, easy.*

² **omnīnō** (*omnis*), adv., *in all, altogether.*

³ **autem**, conj., *besides.* **Autem** never stands first, but usually second in the sentence.

⁴ See 459.

⁵ See 311.

⁶ See 446.

⁷ See 313.

⁸ Note the Latin order. In English we should say *Geneva is*, etc.

LESSON LIX

The Genitive and Ablative of Description.—Causal Clauses.—Caesar, I. 6 (concluded).

463.

MODELS

1. **Vir māgnae auctōritātis**: *A man of great influence.*
2. **Fossa trium pedum**: *A ditch of three feet.*
3. **Vir bonō animō**: *A man well disposed, or of good disposition.*
4. **Bōiī erant māgnā virtūte**: *The Boii were (men) of great valor.*

In these illustrations the genitive or ablative is used to *describe*. The two cases are generally used in this way without any distinction, except that *size, weight* and *number* are expressed by the genitive only. Either case must be modified by an adjective. These constructions are called the genitive and ablative of *description* (*quality or characteristic*).

464. RULE XXXVII.—*The genitive or ablative, with an adjective in agreement, is used to describe a noun.*

465. CAUSAL CLAUSES.—Clauses that express cause or reason are called *causal* clauses. They are adverbial and may begin with these words:

1. **quod** or **quoniam** (**quia**, **quandō**), *because, since*. The verb is in the indicative, or, *if the reason is quoted*, the subjunctive.

Helvētīi reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod cum Germānīs contendunt (261).

2. **cum**, *since, because*. The verb is in the subjunctive:
Hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem mittunt: *Since they could not persuade them, they send ambassadors to Dumnorix.*

NOTE.—**Cum** often denotes both cause and time, as in the last sentence.

466. Vīs, F., *force*, pl. *strength*, is declined thus: Sing.—**vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī**; pl.—**vīrēs, vīrium, vīribus, vīrēs, vīribus**.

TRANSLATE

467. 1. Aciēs legiōnum quattuor. 2. Dumnorīx erat summā audāciā. 3. Hominēs erunt inimicō animō. 4. Perfacile est tōtīus Galliae¹ potīrī, cum Helvētīi virtūte omnibus² praestent. 5. Haeduī, cum sē ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 6. Iter per prōvinciam faciēmus, proptereā quod aliud iter habēmus nūllum. 7. Allobrogibus persuādēbunt, quod sunt nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum. 8. Exīstimant sē Allobrogibus persuāsūrōs esse, quod sint nōndum bonō

¹ See 360.

² See 379.

animō. 9. Caesar dīxit sē Haeduōs dēfēnsūrum, quoniam Ariovistus bellum eīs intulisset. 10. Vīribus. 11. Vīs flūminis. 12. Vim facere ¹ cōnantur. 13. Eōs vī cōgent.

468. 1. A journey ² of ten days. 2. Soldiers of better spirit.³ 3. The town was easily taken,⁴ because it was not fortified. 4. He says the town will easily be taken, because it is not fortified. 5. Since they could not persuade the Allobroges, they compelled them by force. 6. The sword is four feet shorter than the spear. 7. The same day aid was brought to the foot-soldiers, who had fought as bravely as they could.⁵

469. CAESAR, I. 6 (CONCLUDED): THE HELVETII CHOOSE THE ROAD THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē ³ vel persuāsūrōs (quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur) ⁴ exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs īre paterentur.⁵ Omnibus ⁵ rēbus ⁶ ad profectiōnem comparātis diem dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs convenient. Is diēs erat a.⁷ d. v. Kal.¹ Apr.,² L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.⁸

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ **Kalendae**, -ārum, F., *Calends*, the first day of the Roman month.

² **Aprīlēs**, -e, adj., of *April*.

³ See 350.

⁴ The passive of **videō** may mean *seem*, as here.

⁵ See 206.

⁶ See 279.

⁷ **ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs**, *March 28*. The Romans did not number the days of the month as we do, but called the first day the *Calends* (**Kalendae**), the fifth (seventh of Mar., May, Jul. and Oct.) the *Nones* (**Nōnae**), and the thirteenth (fifteenth of Mar., May, Jul. and Oct.) the *Ides* (**Īdūs**).

The days between the Calends and the Nones were reckoned as so many days each before the Nones; the days between the Nones and the Ides as

¹ to use.

² iter.

³ animus.

⁴ expūgnō.

⁵ possum.

so many days each before the Ides ; the days after the Ides as so many days each before the Calends of the next month. But they counted both the day *from* which and the day *to* which they reckoned. Therefore, to determine a date falling before the Calends, add two to the number of days in the current month before subtracting the given ordinal. Thus, in the above date, $31 + 2 - 5 = 28$.

The phrases **ante diem quintum Kalendās Aprīlēs** is idiomatic, for which we should expect **diē quīntō ante Kal. Apr.**

⁸ See 279. The Roman year was designated by the names of the consuls for that year, as though we were to say "during the administration of Lincoln." The year above referred to was 58 B.C.

LESSON LX

The Dative with Certain Verbs.—Temporal Clauses. Caesar, I. 7 (begun).

470. The dative of indirect object (61) is used as follows:—

1. With transitive verbs in connection with the direct object (63): **Belgae Gallīs victōriam nūntiant** (62).

2. With verbs compounded with certain prepositions (379): **Helvētiī omnibus praestant** (378).

3. With intransitive verbs. Some verbs which in English are transitive, and therefore take a direct object, are intransitive in Latin and take an indirect object. These verbs are given in 471:—

1. **Fīnitīmīs persuādent**: *They persuade the neighbors.*

2. **Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentum darent**: *He ordered the Allobroges to give them grain.*

471. RULE XXXVIII.—*The dative of the indirect object is used with verbs meaning favor, help, please, trust, command, obey, serve, resist, believe, persuade, envy, threaten, pardon, spare.*

NOTE.—In the passive construction these verbs are impersonal (428), and the dative is retained:—**Fīnitīmīs persuādētur** : *The neighbors are persuaded (it is persuaded to, etc.).* See 206, b.

472. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—Temporal¹ clauses (clauses expressing *time*) begin with these words—

1. **cum**, *when*. Review 369.

2. **postquam**, *after*, **ubi**, **ut**, **simul** (**atque**), *when, as soon as*. Indicative mood.

Ubi diēs vēnit, lēgātī revertērunt : *When the day came, the ambassadors returned.*

3. **dum**, *while*. Indicative historical present.

Dum haec geruntur, lēgātus pervēnit : *While these things were going on, the lieutenant arrived.*

4. **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, *as long as*. Indicative mood.

5. **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, *until*. Indicative, to denote an actual event; subjunctive, to denote an expected event.

Caesar Genāvae manēbit, dum milītēs conveniant : *Caesar will stay at Geneva, until the soldiers assemble.*

6. **antequam**, **priusquam**, *before*. Mood the same as in 5.

473.

VOCABULARY

paucī, -ae, -a, *few*.

postquam, conj., *after*.

praecipuē, adv., *especially*.

priusquam, conj., *before*.

dum, conj., *while, as long as, until*.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tarry, wait*.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultum, *favor*.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, *know*.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, *withstand, resist*.

¹ From *tempus*.

TRANSLATE

474. 1. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum numerum mīlitum imperat.¹ 2. Prīma aciēs hostibus resistet. 3. Decimae legiōnī Caesar indulsit praecipuē. 4. Ariovistus eīs, quōs vīcit, imperābit. 5. Postquam id vīdit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem dūxit. 6. Nōn exspectāre statuit, dum in prōvinciam Helvētīi pervenīrent. 7. Dum paucōs diēs² frūmentī causā morātur, dē Germānīs certior factus est. 8. Priusquam dē Dumnorīge statueret, Dīviciācum ad sē vocat. 9. Priusquam mīlitēs laudō, pauca dē virtūte dīcam. 10. Ipse, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit. 11. Cum hostibus resistere nōn possent, ad montem sē recēpērunt. 12. Hostēs nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi nostrōs ad flūmen euntēs⁶ vīderant, celeriter impetum fēcērunt.

475. 1. We shall remain until you return.³ 2. While they tarried a few hours, they were informed of⁴ the battle. 3. After the Helvetians formed (made) the conspiracy, they emigrated.⁵ 4. Before they emigrated, Orgetorix died. 5. Caesar sent a lieutenant to levy two legions. 6. There are many who say that the first line cannot withstand the enemy. 7. He thinks that the general will favor the sixth legion.

476. Review chapters 4, 5 and 6, page 223.

CAESAR, I. 7 (BEGUN): CAESAR GOES TO GENEVA.
THE HELVETII SEND AMBASSADORS

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset eōs¹ per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat² ab urbe³ proficīscī, et quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad⁴ Genāvam pervenit. Prō-

¹ levies (upon).
domō.

² See 387.

³ revertor.

⁴ dē.

⁵ exeō

⁶ From eō.

5 vinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum
imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pon-
tem quī erat ad Genāvam iubet rescindī.

Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt,
lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius
10 lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verudoctius prīncipem ⁵ locum
obtinēbant, ⁶ quī dīcerent ⁷ ' sibi ⁸ esse ⁹ in animō sine ūllō
maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod
aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre ut ēius voluntāte
id sibi facere liceat.'

NOTES

- ¹ See 430. ² See 402. ³ What city? ⁴ **Ad** with the
meaning *towards, near to*, may be used with the names of towns (446).
⁵ Adjective. ⁶ See 122. ⁷ See 199. ⁸ See 115. ⁹ What
is the subject?

LESSON LXI

The Periphrastic Conjugations.—The Dative of the Agent.—Caesar, I. 7 (continued).

477. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC.¹ — The *future active participle* may be used with forms of **sum**, to express future or intended action:

laudātūrus (-a, -um) **sum**, *I am about to praise, am going to praise.*

This is called the *active periphrastic* conjugation, and is found in the indicative, subjunctive, and present and perfect infinitive. Write a synopsis of **laudō** in this conjugation.

¹ A "periphrastic" form is a form consisting of more than one word. The compound tenses of the passive voice (283) are therefore periphrastic, but the word is limited to the above use.

478. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC.—The *gerundive* may be used with forms of **sum**, to express action which is necessary or ought to take place.

laudandus (-a, -um) sum, *I am to be praised, have to be praised, must be praised.*

This is called the *passive periphrastic* conjugation, and is found in the same forms as the active periphrastic. Write a synopsis of **moneō** in this conjugation.

479. DATIVE OF AGENT.—The agent or doer of the action expressed by a passive periphrastic form is denoted by the dative instead of the ablative (104).

1. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda:** *Everything had to be done by Caesar at one time.*
2. **Statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum:** *He decided that he ought to cross the Rhine (literally, that the Rhine ought to be crossed by him).*

480. RULE XXXIX.—*The dative of the agent is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation.*

481. Some verbs have the passive periphrastic used impersonally: **Caesar exspectandum esse sibi statuit:** *Caesar decided that he ought to wait (waiting must be by him).*

482. VOCABULARY

putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *think, suppose.*

concedō (con + cēdō), -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *yield, make a concession.*

instruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctum, *build, draw up (troops).*

TRANSLATE

483. 1. Signum dandum est. 2. Signum datūrī sumus. 3. Acies instruenda erit. 4. Aciem est instructurus. 5. Milites revocandī erant. 6. Milites revocāturus sum. 7. Frumentum portātūrī sunt. 8. Frumentum militibus portandum erat. 9. Oportet¹ frumentum darī militibus. 10. Orgetorix suae civitatis imperium obtenturus est. 11. Orgetorigi imperium obtinendum est. 12. Dicit Orgetorigem imperium esse obtenturum. 13. Caesar concessurus erat. 14. Caesar concēdendum (esse sibi) nōn putābat. 15. Timēbam nē Orgetorix imperium obtenturus esset. 16. Timeō ut frumentum comportātum sit. 17. Sine causā timendum (esse sibi) nōn putat. 18. Locus erat idōneus ad aciem instruendam.

484. 1. The lieutenant is about to advise the merchants. 2. The lieutenant must advise the merchants.² 3. We are about to praise the sailor. 4. The sailor must be praised. 5. The boy is going³ to announce the victory. 6. The victory had to be announced by the boy. 7. Peace must be made. 8. They were about to make peace. 9. They must send a letter to their friends.² 10. Caesar himself is going³ to command the legions. 11. He thinks that Caesar is going to command the legions.⁴ 12. When the lines had been drawn up, the signal was given.

**485. CAESAR, I. 7 (CONTINUED): CAESAR DISTRUSTS THE
HELVETII**

Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L.⁴ Cassium cōsulem occisum² exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum³ et sub iugum missum,⁵ concēdendum nōn putābat; neque ho-

¹ See 428.

² Change this sentence to the passive construction before translating. Why? See 478.

³ See 477.

⁴ See 471.

minēs inimīcō animō,⁶ datā facultāte⁷ per prōvinciam itineris faciendī temperātūrōs¹ ab iniūriā⁸ et maleficiō 5 exīstimābat.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ *temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refrain.*

² *occīdō (ob + caedō), -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill.*

³ *pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, (strike, drive), defeat.*

⁴ *Lūcium.* What kind of clause begins with this word? ⁵ Supply *esse* with *occīsum, pulsum* and *missum*. ⁶ See 464. ⁷ See 277.

⁸ See 448.

LESSON LXII

The Verbs *volō* and *nōlō*.—Conditional Sentences.—
Caesar, I. 7 (concluded).

486. Learn from the Appendix (42) the conjugation of the irregular verbs *volō, velle', voluī, wish, be willing*, and *nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, not wish, be unwilling*.¹ Notice that the irregular forms are chiefly the present indicative, present and imperfect subjunctive, and present infinitive.

487. These verbs may take a complementary infinitive (230, 2), or an infinitive with subject-accusative (231, 2).

1. *Venīre voluit: He wished to come.*

2. *Germānōs in Galliā esse nōluērunt: They did not wish the Germans to be in Gaul.*

488. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. — Conditional sentences are complex sentences of which one clause expresses a condition, and the other a conclusion: *If he tries, he will succeed.* *If he tries* is the condition; *he will*

¹ *Mālō* (= *magis + volō*), *wish rather, prefer*, is given in the Appendix.

succeed, the conclusion. In Latin the condition generally begins with the conjunction **sī**, *if*.

489. The condition may be of the following kinds:

I. Present condition. { 1. Stated as a fact. Present indicative. *If he is coming, it is well: Sī venit, bene est.*
2. Contrary to fact. Imperfect subjunctive. *If he were coming, it would be well: Sī venīret, bene esset.*

II. Past condition. { 1. Stated as fact. A past indicative. *If he came, it was well: Sī vēnit, bene fuit.*
2. Contrary to fact. Pluperfect subjunctive. *If he had come, it would have been well: Sī vēnisset, bene fuisset.*

III. Future condition. { 1. More probable (*shall, will*). Future or future perfect indicative. *If he comes (shall come), it will be well: Sī veniet, bene erit.*
2. Less probable (*should, would*). Present (or perfect) subjunctive. *If he should come, it would be well: Sī veniat, bene sit.*

TRANSLATE

490. 1. Sī volt. 2. Sī voluit. 3. Sī volet. 4. Sī velit.
5. Sī vellet. 6. Sī voluisset. 7. Putat eōs velle. 8. Putat eōs voluisse. 9. Nōn est dubium quā voluerit. 10. Nō lumus. 11. Nōluerant. 12. Sī nōlītis. 13. Sī nōllētis. 14. Sī nōluissētis. 15. Sunt quī ire nōlint. 16. Sī trānsīre cōnantur. 17. Sī cōnentur. 18. Sī cōnātī essent. 19. Sī

trānsīre cōnābuntur,¹ eōs prohibēbit. 20. Sī obsidēs ab eīs dentur, cum eīs pācem faciat. 21. Sī proeliō contendere voluisset, vīcisset. 22. Sī facultās dētur,² ab maleficiō nōn temperent.

491. 1. To have been willing. 2. I do not think he is 'unwilling. 3. If the soldiers are brave, they are praised. 4. If the soldier is (shall be)¹ brave, he will be praised. 5. If the soldier should be brave, he would be praised. 6. If the soldier was brave, he was praised. 7. If the soldier were brave,³ he would be praised. 8. If the soldier had been brave,⁴ he would have been praised. 9. The army must not be sent under the yoke.

492. CAESAR, I. 7 (CONCLUDED): CAESAR POSTPONES HIS REPLY TO THE HELVETII

Tamen,³ ut spatium¹ intercēdere⁴ posset dum⁵ militēs quōs imperāverat convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem⁶ sē ad dēlībērandum⁷ sūmptūrum; sī quid⁸ vellent,⁹ ad Īdūs² Aprīlēs reverterentur.¹⁰

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ *spatium, -ī, N., space, space of time.*

² *Īdūs, -uum, F., Ides. See 469, 7.*

³ *tamen, adv., yet, nevertheless.*

⁴ *intercēdō (inter + cēdō), -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, come between, intervene.*

⁵ See 472.

⁶ *time.*

⁷ See 414.

⁸ *anything, indefinite pronoun, object of vellent.*

⁹ *should wish.*

Vellent is in the imperfect subjunctive, not according to 489, I, 2, but because the sentence is quoted. Quoted sentences are explained in 548. ¹⁰ *should return.* The passive of *revertō* is deponent in the present system.

¹ The English generally uses the *present* in a future more probable condition, though the Latin requires the future. ² How else can this condition be expressed (279)? ³ Does this mean that he is brave? ⁴ Does this mean that he was brave?

LESSON LXIII—REVIEW

CAESAR, I. 8 (BEGUN)

493. 1. How are numeral adjectives classified? 2. What numerals are declined? 3. Decline **ūnus** and **duo**. 4. Conjugate **volō** and **nōlō**. 5. Explain the periphrastic conjugations. 6. Give an example of a genitive of description. 7. With what verbs is the dative of indirect object used? 8. By what cases is the agent of an action expressed? 9. Classify causal clauses. 10. Temporal clauses. 11. Conditional sentences. 12. What is a clause of characteristic?

494.

VOCABULARY

Kalendae	omnīnō	sī	intercēdō
spatium	praecipuē	moror	nōscō
famēs	tamen	putō	occīdō
tempestās	vix	temperō	pellō
vīs	autem	tolerō	resistō
Idūs	dum	indulgeō	nōlō
expeditus	postquam	concēdō	volō
paucī	priusquam	īnstruō	

495. Translate in review the sentences of 460, 467, 474, 483, 490.

496. CAESAR, I. 8 (BEGUN): CAESAR CONSTRUCTS FORTIFICATIONS

Intereā ¹ eā legiōne ² quam sēcum ³ habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī

finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia ⁴ passuum ⁵ ūndēvigintī ⁶ mūrum in altitūdinem pedum ⁶ sēdecim ⁵ fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere ⁷ perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō ⁷ trānsīre cōnārentur, ⁸ prohibēre possit.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ *intereā* (*inter* + *ea*), adv., *meanwhile*.

² See 74. ³ See 439. ⁴ See 387. ⁵ See 385. ⁶ See 464. ⁷ See 279.
⁸ *sī*—*cōnārentur* is not a present contrary-to-fact condition (489, I. 2), but a future less probable. It seems, therefore, that it should be in the present subjunctive (489, III. 2) rather than the imperfect. For this change, see the rule for sequence of tenses (405). ⁹ *nineteen miles long*.

LESSON LXIV

The Interrogative Pronoun *quis*.—Questions and Answers.—Caesar, I. 8 (concluded).

497. The interrogative pronoun ***quis*** is declined thus:

SING.	M. AND F.	N.
N.	quis	quid , <i>who? what?</i>
G.	cūius	cūius , <i>whose?</i>
D.	cui	cui , <i>to, for whom?</i>
Ac.	quem	quid , <i>whom? what?</i>
Ab.	quō	quō , <i>with, from, by whom or what?</i>

The plural is like that of the relative ***quī***.

498. The interrogative adjective ***quī***, ***quae***, ***quod***, *which? what?* is declined like the relative ***quī***. For the interrogative adjective ***uter***, see 177.

499. QUESTIONS.—Questions in Latin may be introduced by an interrogative pronoun, interrogative ad-

jective or interrogative adverb, especially **-ne**, **nōne** or **num**. **Nōne** implies the answer *yes*; **num**, the answer *no*; **-ne** is an enclitic attached to the emphatic word, and implies nothing regarding the answer.

1. **Quis coniūrātiōnem fēcit?** *Who made the conspiracy?*
2. **Quī Helvētius coniūrātiōnem fēcit?** *What Helvetian made a conspiracy?*
3. **Ubi coniūrātiōnem fēcit?** *Where did he make a conspiracy?*
4. **Gallusne coniūrātiōnem fēcit?** *Did a Gaul make a conspiracy?*
5. **Nōne coniūrātiōnem fēcit?** *Did he not make a conspiracy?*
6. **Num coniūrātiōnem fēcit?** *He did not make a conspiracy, did he?*

500. ANSWERS.—A question may be answered by repeating the verb (with **nōn**, if negative), or by using the adverbs **certē**, *certainly*, **etiam**, *even so*, **ita**, *so*, **yes**, **nōn**, *no*, **minimē**, *by no means*, etc.

501. DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—Questions like those in 499 are *direct*; that is, they are the exact words of the inquirer. If a question is dependent on a verb meaning *ask*, *say*, *see*, *tell*, *wonder*, etc., it is *indirect*: *They ask who made the conspiracy*. The verb in a Latin indirect question is in the subjunctive: **Rogant quis coniūrātiōnem fēcerit**.

NOTE.—Indirect questions are noun-clauses (430).

502. RULE XL.—*An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.*

503.

VOCABULARY

oculus, -ī, M., *eye*.

iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *decide, judge*.

fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow*.

TRANSLATE

504. 1. Galliane incolitur? 2. Quī incolunt Galliam? 3. Num Rōmānī incolunt Galliam? 4. Quis apud Helvētiōs fuit nōbilissimus? 5. Nōne Helvētiī omnia sua opida incendērunt? 6. Ubi est Genāva? 7. Flūmenne trānsīre possumus? 8. Cōnābimur sī¹ trānsīre possīmus.² 9. In utram partem³ Rhodanus fluit? 10. Oculīs in utram partem³ fluat iūdicārī nōn potest. 11. Quālis erat nātūra montis? 12. Cōgnōvērunt quālis esset nātūra montis. 13. Num Caesar recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēponere potuit? 14. Quās in partēs hostēs iter faciunt? 15. Praemīsīt explōrātōrēs quī vidērent quās in partēs iter facerent.

505. 1. Did the Helvetians go through the province? 2. (By) which road will they go? 3. What does the lieutenant wish to do? 4. He has not said what he wishes to do. 5. How⁴ deep is the river? 6. What mountain is between the Sequani and the Helvetii? 7. He asks what mountain is between the Sequani and the Helvetii. 8. If the men had gone in another direction,⁵ they would have been informed⁶ of the danger.

¹ (*to see*) *if*.

² sī—possīmus, an indirect question, not a condition.

³ *direction*.

⁴ *quam*.

⁵ *pars*.

⁶ See 391.

506. CAESAR, I. 8 (CONCLUDED): THE HELVETII FAIL TO CROSS THE RHONE

Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre¹ et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōentur, prohibitūrum² ostendit. Hel-
 5 vētiī, eā spē³ dēiectī,⁴ nāvibus⁵ iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, aliī vadīs⁶ Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent⁷ cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne⁸ et mīlitum concursū et tēlis repulsī, hōc cōnātū⁹ dēstitērunt.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ See 432, II. ² Supply sē esse. ³ See 448. ⁴ eā—dēiectī, *disappointed in this hope.* ⁵ See 279. ⁶ See 74. ⁷ See 502. ⁸

exemplum, -ī, N., *precedent*, (*ex-ample*). **conkursus**, -ūs, M. (*currō*, *run*), *charge, onset*.

ratis, -is, F., *raft*.

interdiū, adv., *by day*.

complūrēs, -a or -ia, gen. -ium,

noctū, adv., *by night*.

adj., *a great many, very many*.

numquam, adv., *never*.

cōnātus, -ūs, M. (*cōnor*), *attempt*.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *say* — *not, refuse*.

dēiciō (dē + iaciō), **dēicere**, **dēiēcī**, **dēiectum**, *throw down, cast down*.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *cease, desist from*.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *show, declare*.

perrumpō (per + rumpō), -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *break through, force a passage*.

repellō (re + pellō), **repellere**, **reppulī**, **repulsum**, *drive back, repel*.

LESSON LXV

Personal Pronouns.—Indefinite Pronouns.—Review of Pronouns.

507. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.—The personal pronouns are **ego**, *I*, of the first person, and **tū**, *thou, you*, of the

second person. For the third person, as already learned, the demonstratives or the reflexive **sui** are used. Learn the declension of **ego** and **tū** (Appendix, 18).

508. USE OF *ego* AND *tū*.—The nominatives **ego**, **tū**, **nōs** and **vōs** are seldom used, except for emphasis. The genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used only after words implying a part: **Quis vestrum ibit?** *Who of you will go?*

509. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—The indefinite pronouns are so called because they do not refer to any definite person or thing. They are **quis** (**quī**) and its compounds.

1. **quis**, *any (one), anything.*
2. **aliquis**, *some (one), some thing.*
3. **quispiam**, *any (one) at all.*
4. **quisquam**, *any (one) at all* (chiefly in negative sentences).
5. **quīlibet**, *any (one) you please.*
6. **quīvis**, *any (one) you will.*
7. **quisque**, *each (one), every (one).*
8. **quīdam**, *a certain (one).*

510. DECLENSION OF INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.—**Quis** as a pronoun is declined like the interrogative **quis** (497); as an adjective, like the relative **quī** (182). Only the pronominal part of the compounds is declined. **Aliquis** has **aliqua** instead of **aliquae** in the nominative feminine singular and in the neuter plural. **Quīdam** has **n** instead of **m** before **d** in **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, **quārundam**. **Quisquam** has **c** for **d** in the neuter: **quicquam**.

511. CLASSES OF PRONOUNS.—Pronouns have been classified as follows:—

1. Personal and reflexive: **ego, tū, suī.**
2. Possessive: **meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester.**
3. Demonstrative: **hic, iste, ille, is, idem.**
4. Intensive: **ipse.**
5. Relative: **quī.**
6. Interrogative: **quis.**
7. Indefinite: **quis, etc.**

TRANSLATE

512. 1. Ego vōs laudō. 2. Nōs tē laudāmus. 3. Vōs eum laudātis. 4. Tū eōs laudās. 5. Persuāsītne tibi? 6. Mihi persuādēbant. 7. Dicit tē ire sēcum.¹ 8. Nōnne īs mēcum?¹ 9. Quis nostrum ire volt? 10. Hī virī ire nōlunt. 11. Puerī mihi² vocandī sunt. 12. Sī nōbīs persuādēbit, bene erit. 13. Ipsī ad Rhēnum ībant. 14. Ab ipsīus³ castrīs. 15. Caesar īisdem ducibus ūsus est quī nūntiī⁴ vēnerant. 16. Priusquam⁵ Caesar quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviaciūm ad sē vocārī iubet. 17. Sī quid volent, revertentur. 18. Quīdam ex mīlitibus⁶ decimae legiōnis. 19. Quisque sibi frūmentum domō extulit. 20. Nōn sine aliquā spē.

513. 1. Caesar sent a certain man (as) scut. 2. I am going⁷ to see the same ships. 3. Was your brother praised by his friends? 4. Our house is very⁸ large. 5. Some friends have come to see¹¹ us. 6. My father has given me⁹ a letter. 7. If anyone is¹⁰ able to cross the river, he will be praised. 8. Every one waited until he heard the signal.

¹ Cum is an enclitic with the ablative of the personal, reflexive and relative pronouns. ² See 480. ³ See 257. ⁴ Predicate nominative.

⁵ See 472. ⁶ ex mīlitibus = mīlitum. ⁷ See 477. ⁸ How is this to be expressed in Latin (296)? ⁹ What case? ¹⁰ What tense is to be used in Latin? ¹¹ See 414.

LESSON LXVI

The Objective Genitive.—Review of the Genitive.—
Caesar, I. 9 (begun).

514.

VOCABULARY

contumēlia, -ae, F., <i>disgrace</i> , <i>insult</i> .	dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., (<i>doubt</i>), <i>hesitation</i> .
fortūna, -ae, F., <i>chance</i> , <i>fortune</i> ; pl. <i>property</i> .	prōditiō, -ōnis, F., <i>treason</i> .
deus, -ī, M., <i>god</i> (App. 10).	cōnscius, -a, -um, <i>knowing</i> ; with <i>sibi</i> , <i>conscious</i> .
incommodum, -ī, N., <i>disadvantage</i> , <i>misfortune</i> .	prīstinus, -a, -um, <i>former</i> , <i>early</i> .

commoveō (con + moveō), (*put in motion*), *stir*, *alarm*.

miseret, miserēre, miseruit, *it distresses*, *excites pity in*.

oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum, *forget*.

reminīscor, reminīscī, recall (*to mind*), *remember*.

interest, interesse, interfuit, *it interests*, *concerns*.

515. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.—The genitive is sometimes used to denote the object of an action or feeling (expressed or implied), and is then called the objective genitive. It is used with:—

1. Nouns: Cupiditās victōriae, *the desire of victory*.
2. Adjectives (review 213): Cupidus victōriae, *desirous of victory*.
3. Verbs: denoting *memory*, *interest*, *feeling*, *acquitting*, *condemning*, etc.¹

(a) Reminīscitur virtūtis Helvētiōrum: *He recalls the valor of the Helvetians*.

(b) Caesaris interest: *It concerns Caesar*.

¹ See also 360.

- (c) **Eōrum nōs miseret:** *We pity them. (It excites pity of them in us.)*
- (d) **Prōditiōnis accūsātus est:** *He was charged with treason.*

NOTE.—With verbs of *memory*, an object denoting things may be in the accusative.

516. RULE XLI.—*The objective genitive is used with nouns and adjectives denoting desire, memory, knowledge, etc., and with verbs of memory, interest, feeling, acquitting, condemning, etc.*

517. REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE.—The Genitive is used chiefly as follows:—

1. Genitive of possession (47): **tēla mīlitum.**
2. Genitive of description (464): **mīles māgnac virtūtis.**
3. Genitive of the whole (385): **pars mīlitum.** Used with certain nouns, pronouns, adjectives, adverbs.
4. Objective genitive (515): **Mīlitum interest.** Used with certain nouns, adjectives, verbs.

Since the genitive is so frequently used to modify nouns, it may be called the *adjective case*.

518. PREDICATE GENITIVE.—A genitive denoting possession, description or the whole may be used to complete the predicate:—**Gladius est mīlitis:** *The sword is the soldier's.*

TRANSLATE

519. 1. *Māgna pars eōrum.* **2.** *Sociī eōrum.* **3.** *Fortūnae sociōrum.* **4.** *Memoriā patrum nostrōrum.* **5.** *Cōnsiliō deōrum.* **6.** *Oppidum ūteriōris prōvinciae.* **7.** *Multi-tūdō equitum.* **8.** *Orātiōne Caesaris.* **9.** *Imperium Gal-lōrum.* **10.** *Frāter Diviciāci.* **11.** *Satis causae.* **12.** *In exercitū Crassī.* **13.** *Spēs fugae.* **14.** *Āgmen hostium.* **15.** *Duo*

mīlia passuum. 16. Inopia omnium rērum. 17. Minus dubitātiōnis. 18. Cupidus rērum novārum.¹ 19. Helvētiī ēius adventū commōtī sunt. 20. Alicūius iniūriae nōn (sibi) cōnsciū fuit. 21. Veteris contumēliae obliviscī volō. 22. Reminiscimur veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. 23. Intererat² populī Rōmānī Gallōs pācārī.

520. 1. They had been accused of treason. 2. It will interest all the citizens. 3. Do you remember the general's hesitation? 4. Did they forget their former friends? 5. The hill was not of great height. 6. He³ pitied the children who had been sent (as) hostages. 7. If each (man) fights⁴ bravely, we shall conquer. 8. Who was the bravest of the sailors?

521. CAESAR, I. 9 (BEGUN): THE WAY THROUGH THE SEQUANIAN TERRITORY

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte¹ persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātore² ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā³ et largitiōne⁴ apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātīmōnium dūxerat.

VOCABULARY

¹ *sponte* (abl. sing. of *spōns*), F., of one's own accord, voluntarily.

² *dēprecātor*, -ōris, M., mediator. See 279.

³ *grātia*, -ae, F., favor, good-will, influence. See 393.

⁴ *largitiō*, -ōnis, F., (a giving freely), bribery.

¹ *new things* = revolution.

² What is the subject?

³ What case

must be used in Latin? See *nōs* in 515, c.

⁴ What tense in Latin?

LESSON LXVII

The Datives of Purpose and of Reference.—Review of the Dative.—Caesar I. 9 (concluded).

522.

VOCABULARY

mandō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, (*put in hand*), *intrust*; with **sē fugae**, *betake himself to*.

renūntiō (re + nūntiō, 38), *bring back word, report*.

studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, *be eager, desire* (with dative).

dēligō (dē + legō), -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *choose, select*.

satisfaciō (satis + faciō, 250), *give satisfaction, make amends, apologize*.

523.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Castrīs locum dēlēgit**: *He selected a place for a camp.*
2. **Vōbīs praesidiō relictī sunt**: *They have been left as (for) a guard to you.*
3. **Militēs erant sibi impedimentō**: *The soldiers were a hindrance to themselves.¹*

Castrīs and **praesidiō** (sentences 1 and 2) are datives for which some thing is or is done, and are called datives of *purpose*. **Impedimentō** (sentence 3) may be called a dative of *result*. **Vōbīs** and **sibi** (sentences 2 and 3) denote the person to whom something is of interest, and are called datives of *reference*. The dative of reference is often used with the dative of purpose or result, as in sentences 2 and 3.

524. RULE XLII.—A noun in the dative may denote the purpose or result of an action.

¹ Being in close array.

525. RULE XLIII.—A noun in the dative may denote the object to which something is of interest. (Dative of reference.)

526. REVIEW OF THE DATIVE.—The dative is used chiefly as follows:

1. Dative of indirect object, with—

(a) Transitive verbs (63): **Tuba puerō dabitur.**

(b) Certain intransitives (471): **Ariovistus Germānis imperāvit.**

(c) Certain compounds (379): **Equitātūi Dumnorix praeerat.**

2. Dative of the possessor (115): **Tuba est mihi.**

3. Dative of the agent (480): **Tibi signum dandum est.**

4. Dative with certain adjectives (314): **Puer est similis patrī.**

5. Dative of purpose (524): **Castris locum dēlēgit.**

6. Dative of reference (525): **Vōbis praesidiō relictī sunt.**

TRANSLATE

527. 1. Hīs Caesar ita respondit. 2. Reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunť.¹ 3. Vēnit Belgīs auxiliō. 4. Novīs rēbus studēbant. 5. Novissimis² praesidiō erant. 6. Diviciācus fuit amīcissimus Caesarī. 7. Cui legiōnī Caesar praecipuē indulsit? 8. Helvētiīs est in animō. 9. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum iter facere. 10. Liscus summō magistrātūi praeerat.³ 11. Locus idōneus castris tibi dēligendus est. 12. Caesar dicit sibi nūllam cum hīs amicitiam esse posse. 13. Sī vōs Haeduīs dē⁴ iniuriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulistis, satisfaciētis, ego vōbiscum pācem faciam.

¹ See 265.

² Novissimis = novissimō āgminī.

³ held.

⁴ for.

528. 1. The Belgae are next to the Celts. 2. The Allobroges made amends to the Haedui. 3. They had inflicted injuries upon the Haedui. 4. Caesar persuaded the Allobroges to make amends. 5. We are about to select a leader. 6. You can be a help (aid) to your brother. 7. The boys have many rafts, in order that they may cross¹ the river. 8. It happened that the boys had many rafts.

529. CAESAR, I. 9 (CONCLUDED): THE AGREEMENT
BETWEEN THE SEQUANI AND THE HELVETII

Cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et
quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō¹ habēre obstrictās²
volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut
per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī
5 inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī nē itinere Helvētiōs pro-
hibeant; Helvētiī ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

VOCABULARY

¹ **beneficium -ī**, N. (ben + faciō), (*well-doing*), *favor, kindness*.

² **obstringo** (ob + stringo), -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, *bind, lay under obligation*.

¹ *go across.*



Scūtum
(Shield)

LESSON LXVIII

Two Accusatives.—Review of the Accusative and Ablative.—Caesar, I. 10 (begun).

530.

VOCABULARY

portōrium, -ī, N., *tax, toll, duty.*

nēmō, nēminis, M. and F. (nē + homō), *no one.*

flāgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand urgently.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *teach.*

liceor, licērī, licitus sum, *bid* (at auction).

cōnsūmō (con + sūmō, 244), *consume, waste, destroy.*

redimō (red + emō, *buy*), -imere, -ēmī, -ēemptum, *buy back, buy up.*

531.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. Celtās Gallōs appellāmus: *We call the Celts Gauls.*
2. Dīcimus Celtās esse Gallōs: *We say that the Celts are Gauls.*

In these sentences Gallōs completes the predicate, and is called a *predicate accusative*. If the sentences were Celtac Gallī appellantur and Celtac sunt Gallī, how would the case of Gallī be explained? Review 105.

532. RULE XLIV.—A *predicate accusative* may be used after the active of the verbs make, name, choose, call, etc. (together with a direct object); and after the infinitive esse.¹

¹ Or any other verb which in the *indicative* may have a predicate nominative.

533.

MODEL SENTENCES

1. **Nōs litterās docuit:** *He taught us (our) letters.*
2. **Cōpiās pontem trādūxit:** *He led the troops over the bridge.*

Here **nōs** and **cōpiās** are the direct objects, while **litterās** and **pontem** may be called *secondary* objects.

534. RULE XLV.—*A secondary object in the accusative (together with a direct object) may be used with verbs meaning ask, demand, teach, conceal; and after transitive verbs compounded with trāns.*

535. REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE.—An accusative may be used chiefly as follows:—

1. Direct object (40): **Puerōs laudat.**
2. Predicate accusative (532): **Celtās Gallōs appellāmus.**
3. Secondary object (534): **Cōpiās pontem trādūxit.**
4. Object of a preposition (49): **Trāns pontem.**
5. Subject of an infinitive (233): **Dīcit montem esse altum.**
6. Accusative of place to which (446).
 - (a) With prepositions (**ad, in**): **Ad montem īvit.**
 - (b) Without prepositions: **Rōmam īvit.**
7. Accusative of duration of time (387): **Duās hōrās nāvigāvit.**
8. Accusative of extent of space (387): **Duo mīlia passuum nāvigāvit.**

536. REVIEW OF THE ABLATIVE.—The following are the principal uses of the ablative:—

1. Ablative of separation (with or without **ab, dē** or **ex**, 448): **Celtae ā Belgīs differunt.**
2. Ablative of agent (**ab**, 104): **Ab lēgātō laudābātur.**
3. Ablative of comparison (303): **Sōl est māior lūnā.**

4. Ablative of means (74): **Oculis videmus.**

Including ablative with **utor**, etc. (360): **Gladiis usi sumus.**

5. Ablative of manner (**cum**, 252): **Magna cum virtute contendunt.**6. Ablative of cause (393): **Gratiā plurimum poterat.**7. Ablative of accompaniment (**cum**, 439): **Cum amicis ivit.**8. Ablative of degree of difference (311): **Unō pede brevior.**9. Ablative of description (464): **Puer magnā gratiā.**10. Ablative of specification (144): **Virtute praestant.**11. Ablative absolute (with a participle, an adjective or another noun, 279): **Hoc proelio factō.**12. Ablative of place in which (**in**, 446): **In castris.¹**

13. Ablative of place from which (446).

(a) With a preposition (**ab**, **dē**, **ex**): **Ex Italiā vēnit.**

(b) Without a preposition: **Romā vēnit.**

14. Ablative of time when or within which (159): **Eodem diē vēnit.**

The ablative may be called the *adverbial* case, for it is most frequently used to modify a verb.

TRANSLATE

537. 1. Per Alpēs. 2. In finēs Aquitānōrum. 3. In proximās silvās. 4. Posterō diē. 5. Ex omnī prōvinciā. 6. Cum equitatū Helvētiōrum. 7. Paucī dē nostrīs.² 8. Teneō memoriā.³ 9. Minore cum periculō. 10. Causā cōgnitā.⁴ 11. Pīlis missis.⁴ 12. Agrīs populātis. 13. His cīvitatibus pulsīs.⁵ 14. Omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōn-sūmptis. 15. Ea cīvitas est in prōvinciā. 16. Ā magi-

¹ For the names of towns, small islands, etc., see 445, c.

² **dē nostrīs** = **nostrōrum**.

³ See 344.

⁴ The exact translation of an ablative absolute cannot be given without the rest of the sentence.

Translate these phrases in several ways.

⁵ From **pellō**.

strātū accūsābātur. 17. Helvētiī ratibus flūmen trānsībant. 18. Cum eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant. 19. Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 20. Nōn longius quīngentīs passibus abest. 21. Nōn longē ab Allobrogum finibus absunt. 22. Complūrēs annōs Dumnorīx portōria redēmit, proptereā quod illō licente nēmō contrā ¹ licērī audēbat.²

538. 1. The Helvetians chose Orgetorix (as) leader. 2. Orgetorix was chosen leader. 3. Do you think that Orgetorix will be leader? 4. Having given a pledge,³ Orgetorix became ⁴ leader. 5. We asked ⁵ the sailor his name. 6. The boys had been taught their letters ⁶ at home. 7. We shall not go home until you return.

539. Review chapters 7, 8 and 9, pages 224 and 225.

CAESAR, I. 10 (BEGUN): CAESAR LEARNS OF THE PLAN

Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae cīvitas est in Prōvinciā. Id⁴ sī fieret, intellegēbat ³ 5 māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ⁵ ut hominēs bellicōsōs,¹ populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus ⁶ māximēque frūmentāriīs ² finitimōs ⁷ habēret.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ *bellicōsus*, -a, -um (bellum + ōsus), *warlike*.

² *frūmentārius*, -a, -um (frūmentum + ārius), *abounding in grain*.

³ *intellegō* (inter + legō), -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *perceive, understand*.

⁴ Subject.

⁵ Supply *esse*, *it would be*.

⁶ *in open places*.

⁷ Predicate acc., *have as neighbors*.

¹ Adverb.

² Not from *audiō*. See 357.

³ *fidēs*.

⁴ *fiō*.

⁵ *rogō*.

⁶ After a passive the accusative is retained.

LESSON LXIX

The Imperative Mood.—Negative Command (Prohibition).—Caesar, I. 10 (concluded).

540. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.—The imperative mood is used to express command or entreaty. It has two tenses in each voice, the *present* and the *future*. The present tense has only the second person, the third being supplied by the subjunctive (562). The future, which is rarely used, has the second and third persons. The forms of the imperative are made by adding to the *present stem* the following:

PERSONAL ENDINGS OF THE IMPERATIVE

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> 2. (Stem)	-te	-re	-minī
<i>Fut.</i> 2. -tō	-tōte	-tor	
3. -tō	-nto	-tor	-ntor

541. Active Imperative of *laudō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> 2. <i>laudā, praise thou.</i>	<i>laudāte, praise ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> 2. <i>laudātō, thou shalt praise.</i>	<i>laudātōte, ye shall praise.</i>
3. <i>laudātō, he shall praise.</i>	<i>laudanto, they shall praise.</i>

542. Passive Imperative of *laudō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> 2. <i>laudāre</i> , <i>be thou praised.</i>	<i>laudāminī</i> , <i>be ye praised.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> 2. <i>laudātor</i> , <i>thou shalt be praised.</i>	
3. <i>laudātor</i> , <i>he shall be praised.</i>	<i>laudantor</i> , <i>they shall be praised.</i>

Learn from the Appendix the *present* imperative of *moneō*, *regō*, *capiō*, *audiō*; and of *sum*, *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō* and *nōlō*.

543. NEGATIVE COMMAND.—The *negative* of a command (a prohibition) is usually not expressed by the imperative of the given verb, but by either of the following ways:

1. *Nōlī* (*nōlīte*) + the present infinitive:—*Nōlī laudāre*: *Do not praise.*

2. *Nē*, *cavē*,¹ or *cavē nē*, + the present or perfect subjunctive:—*Nē laudāveris*: *Don't praise.* *Cavē nē laudēs*: *Don't praise (Take care lest you praise).*

TRANSLATE

544. 1. Mitte nūntium. 2. Nōlī mittere nūntium. 3. Persuādēte finitimīs. 4. Nōlīte persuādēre finitimīs. 5. Cōnāre trānsire. 6. Nōlī cōnārī trānsire. 7. Ūtiminī gladiīs. 8. Nōlīte ūtī gladiīs. 9. Venīte. 10. Nē vēneritis. 11. Iace pīlum. 12. Cavē nē iaciās pīlum. 13. Mo-

¹ Imperative of *caveō*, *cavēre*, *cāvī*, *cautum*, *take care, beware.*

nētō, monentō. 14. Monētor, monentor. 15. Audītōte. 16. Reminīsciminī virtūtis Gallōrum. 17. Nōlī timēre sine causā. 18. Nē oblīvīscāris bonī amīcī. 19. Castra movēte, nē hostēs in nōs impetum noctū faciant. 20. Ascendite montem ut videātis quam in partem āgmen iter faciat.¹

545. 1. Boys,² be brave. 2. Throw the javelins, soldiers. 3. Come to the ship, sailor. 4. Friend,³ go with me. 5. Choose a man to report⁴ the victory. 6. Fight so bravely that you will conquer.⁵ 7. Order a bridge to be made. 8. Destroy the bridge before⁶ the enemy cross.

546. CAESAR, I. 10 (CONCLUDED): CAESAR INCREASES HIS ARMY

Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Ītaliā māgnīs⁸ itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit, et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam¹ hiemābant ex hibernīs ēdūcit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum 5 hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit.

Ibi Ceutronēs⁴ et Grāioceli⁵ et Caturīgēs³ locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus⁹ hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō,² quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum⁷ 10 ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs⁶ exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ Aquilēia, -ae, F., a Roman town at the head of the Adriatic.

² Ocelum, -i, N., a town in the Alps.

¹ Indirect question, 502. ² Vocative case. See 10. Like what other case is it usually spelled in Latin? ³ See 57. ⁴ Use quī. See 199.

⁵ What mood and tense? See 399.

⁶ priusquam.

³ **Caturīgēs, -um, M.**, an Alpine tribe.

⁴ **Ceutronēs, -um, M.**, an Alpine tribe.

⁵ **Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M.**, an Alpine tribe.

⁶ **Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M.**, a tribe west of the Rhone.

⁷ **Vocontīi, -ōrum, M.**, an Alpine tribe.

⁸ *forced.* The ordinary day's march was 15 miles; a **māgnum iter**, 20 or 25 miles. ⁹ Order: **His pulsīs complūribus proeliīs.** The order in the text is called "interlocked."

LESSON LXX

Indirect Discourse.—Caesar, I. 11 (begun).

547. INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—If we say *The man is brave*, we make a direct statement. If we say *He knows the man to be brave*, or *He said that the man was brave*, the words following *knows* and *said* form indirect statements. When a sentence is quoted in dependence on a verb of *saying, thinking, knowing*, etc., the quotation is an indirect statement or indirect discourse.

548. MOODS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

1. **Virum vīdī quī erat fortis:** *I saw the man who was brave.*
2. **Dicit sē vīdisse virum, quī esset fortis:** *He says that he saw the man who was brave.*

Notice the change of **vīdī**, a principal verb, to **vīdisse**, and of **erat**, a subordinate verb, to **esset**. It is stated in 233 that after a verb of *saying*, etc., an infinitive with subject-accusative is to be used. The general rule for the mood, when direct discourse becomes indirect, is the following:

RULE XLVI.—*When direct discourse is made indirect, a principal declarative verb in the indicative becomes*

infinitive; all subordinate verbs become or remain subjunctive.

NOTE.—Imperative and most interrogative principal verbs become subjunctive.

549. TENSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—The tenses of the infinitive are used according to 421; those of the subjunctive, according to the rule for sequence (405).

550. PRONOUNS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.—In changing from the first or second person to the third, **ego** and **nōs** become **sē**; **meus** and **noster** become **suus**; **tū** and **vōs** become **ille** or **is**.

1. **Ego meum frātre^m vidēbō**: *I shall see my brother.*

Dīcit sē (suum) frātre^m vīsūrum esse: *He says he shall see his brother.*

2. **Tū lacūs vidēbis**: *You will see the lakes.*

Dīxī illum lacūs vīsūrum esse: *I said that he would see the lakes.*

551.

VOCABULARY

colō, -ere, -uī, cultum, *till, cultivate.*

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, (*offer*), *promise.*

Write the infinitives of these verbs. Review 420.

TRANSLATE

552. 1. Nōbīs est in animō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter nōn habēmus. **2.** Dīxērunt sibi esse in animō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter nōn habērent. **3.** Ita nōs dē populō Rōmānō meritī sumus,¹ ut nostrī agrī vāstārī nōn dēbeant. **4.** Dīcunt ita sē dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut suī agrī vāstārī nōn dēbērent. **5.** Sī pācem populus Romanus cum

¹ Present perfect.

Helvētiīs faciet, in aliam partem Galliae ībunt. 6. Putāvit sī pācem populus Romanus cum Helvētiīs faceret, eōs in aliam partem Galliae itūrōs. 7. Sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, utī ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, vōbīscum pācem faciam. 8. Dicit sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, sēsē cum eīs pācem factūrum. 9. Postquam Germānī agrōs Gallicōs vīdērunt, colere eōs voluērunt. 10. Dicēbat postquam Germānī agrōs Gallicōs vīdissent, sē colere eōs voluisse. 11. Ubi est lēgātus prīmae legiōnis? 12. Rogat ubi sit ¹ lēgātus prīmae legiōnis.

553. 1. You will conquer, because you are brave.
 2. I say that you will conquer, because you are brave.
 3. I said you would conquer, because you were brave.
 4. I said they had conquered, because they were brave.
 5. We are laying waste the fields that the Belgians cultivate. 6. They say they are laying waste the fields that the Belgians cultivate. 7. Are you going home? 8. They asked whether ² he was going home.

554. CAESAR, I. 11 (BEGUN): THE HAEDUI ASK CAESAR FOR HELP AGAINST THE HELVETII

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur.¹ Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs ² dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem 5 mittunt rogātum ³ auxilium: 'Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī ⁴ agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.'

NOTES

¹ Notice the difference in tense.

² What kind of ablative?

³ See 412.

⁴ Modifies **exercitūs**.

¹ See 502.

² -ne, enclitic.

LESSON LXXI

Review of the Indicative.—Caesar, I. 11 (concluded).

555. THE INDICATIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.—In principal clauses the indicative is used in direct statements of fact and questions of fact: **Militem laudat; Militemne laudat?**

556. THE INDICATIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The indicative is used chiefly in the following subordinate clauses:—

1. Relative clause, with **quī**, etc. This may be—

(a) *Determining*, that is, it may indicate what person or thing (not what kind¹ of person or thing):
Pōns, quī erat ad (near) Genāvam.

(b) *Parenthetical*, adding a fact not necessary to the main statement: **Proximī sunt Germānīs, quibuscum bellum gerunt.**

2. Causal clause, with **quod, quia, quoniam, quandō**, when the speaker or writer gives his own reason (465): **Virtūte praecēdunt, quod cum Germānīs contendunt.**

3. Temporal clause, with **ubi, ut, simul atque, postquam**, and sometimes **cum, dum, quoad, antequam, priusquam** (472): **Ubi sē esse parātōs arbitrātī sunt**, etc.

4. Conditional clause, with **sī**; present or past condition stated as a fact, or future condition more probable (489): **Sī quid voltis, revertiminī.**

5. Concessive clause, with **quamquam** (*although*), etc. (569).

6. Parenthetical clause, or a clause of comparison, with **ut, q̄s**: **Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est.**

¹ This would require the subjunctive of characteristic (459).

557. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.—Of the six tenses of the indicative, the present, the imperfect and future represent uncompleted action: *laudō*, *I praise, I am praising, I do praise*; *laudābam*, *I was praising, I praised*; *laudābō*, *I shall praise*. The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect represent completed action: *laudāvī*, *I have praised, I praised*; *laudāveram*, *I had praised*; *laudāverō*, *I shall have praised*.

Which of these are called principal tenses? Which historical? Review 403.

558.**VOCABULARY**

factiō, -ōnis, F., party, faction. *alter* — *alter* (177), *one*
conventus -ūs (con + *veniō*), — *the other*; plur. *one*
 M., meeting, assembly. *party* — *the other*.
pūblicus, -a, -um, of the people. *nōn solum* — *sed etiam*,
ple, public. *not only* — *but also*.
stīpendiārius, -a, -um, tributary (tax-paying).

sublevō (sub + *levō*), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (lighten, raise),
assist.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, overcome, conquer.

poscō, -ere, *poposcī*, —, demand.

quaerō, -ere, *quaesivī*, *quaesitum* (seek for), inquire, ask.

subvehō (sub + *vehō*), -vehere, -vēxī, -vectum, bring
 up, convey.

ulcīscor, *ulcīscī*, *ultus sum*, avenge, punish.

Write synopses of the indicative of the verbs in this vocabulary. Review 287.

TRANSLATE

559. 1. Caesar nōn solum pūblicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est. 2. Eō frūmentō,¹ quod nāvibus² sub-

¹ See 360.

² See 74.

vēxerat, utī nōn poterat. 3. Prīncipēs accūsāvit, quod ab eīs nōn sublevābātur. 4. Quaerit ex Liscō sōlō ea quae in conventū dīxerat. 5. Postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit. 6. Haeduī Ariovistō, quoniam superātī sunt, stīpendiārīi sunt factī. 7. Dum haec in conventū geruntur,¹ Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī impetum in nostrōs facere. 8. Ubi frūmentum mīlitibus darī oportēre² intellēxit, prīncipēs convocāvit. 9. Alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta sē contulērunt. 10. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. 11. Sī altera factiō Gallōs superāverit, altera auxilium Caesarem poscet. 12. Superā, posce, quaere, ulcīscere. 13. Superāns, poscēns, ulcīscēns. 14. Belgās superātūrī sumus. 15. Ultus. 16. In quaerendō. 17. Ad frūmentum subvehendum.

560. CAESAR, I. 11 (CONCLUDED): THE AMBARRI AND THE ALLOBROGES ALSO ASK HELP

Eōdem tempore Haeduī Ambarri, necessārii et cōn-sanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs
5 possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectandum¹ sibi² statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmptis, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ See 478.

² See 480.

Ambarri, -ōrum, M., allies of the Haedui.

Santonī, -ōrum, M., a Gallic tribe.

¹ Dum, *while*, takes the historical present (402).

² See 428.

possessiō, -ōnis, F., *possession*.

cōsanguineus -a, -um (*sanguis, blood*), (*related by blood*), *kindred*; as noun, *kinsman*.

necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary*; as noun, *connection, close friend*.

item, adv., *in like manner, likewise*.

dēpopulor (dē + populor, 415), *ravage, lay waste*.

LESSON LXXII

The Subjunctive in Principal Clauses.—Caesar, I. 12 (begun).

561. VARIETIES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.—It was stated in section 197 that the subjunctive represents action as *willed, desired* or *possible*:—

1. **Milem laudēmus**: *Let us praise the soldier.* Act willed.
2. **Frāter veniat**: *May (my) brother come.* Act desired.
3. **Aliquis dicat**: *Some one may say.* Act possible.

The subjunctive of possibility (or potential subjunctive) is not often found except in subordinate clauses. The two other varieties of this mood are best shown in principal clauses (562, 563).

562. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF WILL.¹—This always expresses some one's will: *Let us go (It is my will that we go)*. It includes chiefly:

(a) The subjunctive of exhortation, used in the *first* person plural, to express exhortation:—**Sīmus fortēs**: *Let us be brave*.

(b) The subjunctive of command, used in the *third* person (chiefly), to express command:—**Castra mūniant**: *Let them fortify the camp*.

¹ Sometimes called *volitive* subjunctive (**volō, I will**).

(c) The subjunctive of prohibition, with **nē** (**cavē nē**, 543), used in the *second* person, to express negative command:—**Nē eās**: *Do not go*.

563. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.¹—This expresses some one's desire (without authority). The adverb **utinam**, *O that! Would that!* sometimes begins the sentence when the verb is in the present tense, and always when it is in the imperfect or pluperfect:—

1. (**Utinam**) **frāter veniat**: *O that my brother would come (in the future)!*
2. **Utinam frāter veniret**: *O that my brother were coming (now)!*
3. **Utinam frāter vēnisset**: *O that my brother had come (in the past)!*

564. Nē AND nōn.—The negative adverb used with the subjunctives of will and desire (and rarely with the imperative) is **nē**; with all other forms **nōn** is the negative.

1. **Nē eāmus**: *Let us not go*.
2. **Utinam nē ivisset**: *O that he had not gone!*

NOTE.—Conjugate in review the subjunctive of the model and irregular verbs. Review 368.

TRANSLATE

- 565.** 1. **Proficiscātur, proficiscāmur, proficiscantur.**
 2. **Mulierēs liberōsque dēfendāmus.** 3. **Nē oppidū incendā-**
mus. 4. **Nē dēspērēmus.** 5. **Sīs amīcus lēgātī.** 6. **Orge-**
torīx dēligātur. 7. **Casticō persuādeat.** 8. **Imperium**

¹ Sometimes called *optative* subjunctive (**optō, I desire**).

obtineant. 9. Comparēmus ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinent. 10. Faciāmus sēmentēs quam māximās. 11. Utinam cōnēris. 12. Utinam cōnātī essēmus. 13. Utinam iter esset facile. 14. Utinam auxilium ferrētis. 15. Utinam cōnāta perficere potuisset. 16. Utinam nē Orgetorīx coniūrātiōnem fēcisset. 17. Cōgite Orgetorīgem causam dicere. 18. Nē coēgeritis Orgetorīgem causam dicere.

566. 1. May you be praised. 2. Let us not forget ¹ the brave men.² 3. Let two legions be a guard ³ to the baggage. 4. O that our fields had not been devastated! 5. Ask the general (for) aid.⁴ 6. Do not spend-the-winter in Helvetia. 7. Let the merchant go to the camp, that he may inform Caesar about ⁵ the roads. 8. The merchant says he will go, because he is a friend of the general.

567. CAESAR, I. 12 (BEGUN): THE HELVETII CROSS THE SAÔNE

Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incredibilī lēnitātē,¹ ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat ² iūdicārī nōn possit.³ Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per
5 explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen ⁴ trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem ⁵ citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā ⁶ cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quāe nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY

¹ See 464.

² See 502.

³ See 399.

⁴ See 534.

⁵ See 233.

⁶ The night from sunset to sunrise was divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), the third beginning at midnight.

lēnitas, -*tātis*, F. (*lēnis*, *gentle*), *gentleness*, *sluggish current* (of a river).

¹ See 514.

² See 515.

³ See 524.

⁴ See 534.

⁵ *dē*.

linter, lintris, F., *canoe*.

incrēdibilis, -e (in, not; crēdō, I believe), *incredible, extraordinary*.

citrā, prep. with acc., *this side of*.



Linter

LESSON LXXIII

Concessive Clauses.—Review of the Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.—Caesar, I. 12 (concluded).

568.

VOCABULARY

custōs, -tōdis, M., *guard, spy*.

quantus, -a, -um, *how much?*

how great? as much as, as great as.

aliter (alius), adv., *otherwise*.

cum, concessive conj., *although*.

etsī, conj., *even if, although*.

quamquam, conj., *although*.

tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless*.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know*.

569. **CONCESSIVE CLAUSES.**—A subordinate clause beginning with a conjunction meaning *though, although*, is called *concessive*.¹ The conjunction in Latin may be *quamquam*, *etsī*, *cum*, etc., and the mood may be indicative or subjunctive, as follows:—

(a) Indicative, with *quamquam*:

Quamquam milītēs sunt paucī, tamen fortiter pūgnant:

Although the soldiers are few, yet they are fighting bravely.

¹ From concēdō, I grant (something).

(b) Indicative or subjunctive, with **etsī**, **etiāmsī**, **tametsī** (according to section 489):

Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam ire contendit: *Though the winters are early in these parts, nevertheless Caesar made haste to go to Britain.*

(c) Subjunctive, with **cum**, **quamvis**, etc.:

Cum ea ita sint, tamen Caesar pācem faciet: *Although these things are so, yet Caesar will make peace.*

570. REVIEW OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The subjunctive has been shown to be used in the following clauses:

1. Clauses of purpose, with **ut**, **nē**, or a relative (199).
2. “ “ result, with **ut**, **ut nōn** (399).
3. “ “ characteristic, with **quī**, etc. (459).
4. “ “ time, often with **cum**, **antequam**, **priusquam**, **dum**, **donec**, **quoad** (472).
5. “ “ cause, with **cum**, and sometimes¹ **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quandō** (465).
6. “ “ concession, with **cum**, **quamvis**, etc. (569).
7. “ “ condition (of certain kinds),² with **sī** (489).
8. Noun-clauses, depending on verbs meaning *command*, *persuade*, *urge*, *induce*, *fear*, etc. (206 and 371, Note).
9. Indirect questions (502).
10. Subordinate clauses of indirect discourse (548).

TRANSLATE

571. 1. Fīēbat ut omnēs Gallī commovērentur. 2. Intellegō quantō cum periculō id fēcerim. 3. Dīcit sē intellegere quantō cum periculō id fēcerit. 4. Dīviciācus verētur nē Caesar oppidīs Haeduōrum potiātur. 5. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit ut quae agat scīre possit. 6. Nōn dubium erat quīn Rōmānī Helvētiōs superātūrī essent.³

¹ When?

² What kinds?

³ See 477.

7. Helvētiī, cum ¹ āgmen Caesaris ūnō diē Ararim trānsīsse intellegent, commōtī sunt. 8. Cum prō Haeduīs bellum suscēperit, quod ² ab eīs nōn sublevētur, queritur. 9. Cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, ³ āversum ⁴ hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. 10. Caesar, etsī difficultātem faciendī pontis ⁵ sciēbat, propter lātitudinem, rapiditātem altitudinemque flūminis, tamen aliter nōn trādūcendum ⁶ exercitum exīstimābat.

572. 1. The Helvetians will join their rafts and canoes. 2. If Caesar should not be informed of their plan, the Helvetians would easily cross the Saône. 3. They joined their rafts in order to ⁷ cross more easily. 4. Although the Helvetians have joined their rafts, they will not be able to cross before Caesar reaches ⁸ the river. ⁹ 5. He urged Dumnorix to be a friend of the Roman people. 6. Caesar had sent horsemen to select a place suitable for the camp. 7. Although the Helvetians had a large army, yet they could not resist the Roman forces.

573. CAESAR, I. 12 (CONCLUDED): THE ROMANS DEFEAT PART OF THE HELVETII

Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus cum domō exīssset, patrum ⁵ nostrōrum memoriā L. Cassium cōsulem interfēcerat et eīus exercitum sub iugum mīserat.

¹ Cum has been given as an introductory word for three kinds of clauses, with the meanings *when, since, although*. ² Conjunction.

³ See 428. ⁴ *turned away = fleeing*. ⁵ Over the Rhine. ⁶ See 478.

⁷ How is purpose expressed when there is a comparative in the sentence?

⁸ Future perfect of *pervenīō*.

⁹ Use *ad*.

Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae
 pars civitātis Helvētiaē insīgnem calamitātem populō
 10 Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā
 in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam prīvātās
 iniuriās ultus est; quod eius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L.
 Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium
 interfēcerant.

VOCABULARY

avus, -ī, M., *grandfather*.

socer, -erī, M., *father-in-law*.

cāsus, -ūs, M. (cadō, *fall*), *accident*,
chance.

immortālis, -e (mors), *immortal*.

inopīnāns, -antis, (*not expecting*),
unaware.

īnsignis, -e, (*marked*), *remarkable*

sive — sive, conj., *either — or*,

whether — or.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *put away, hide*.

adgredior (ad + gradior), -gredī, -gressus, (*go towards*), *attack*.

concīdō (con + caedō), -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut to pieces, kill*.

persolvō (per + solvō), -solvere, -solvī, -solūtum, (*release com-*
pletely), *pay*.

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *entangle, impede*.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII

CAESAR, BOOK I, CHAPTERS 1-12.¹

1. Gallia est omnis dīvisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad ef-fēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pŷrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōsulibus, rēgnī

¹ All the text of Chapters 1-12 has been given in the preceding lessons, and is here repeated for connected reading in review.

cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut dē fīnibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: 5 perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtius Galliae imperiō potiri. Id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā 10 altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fiēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur. 15 Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum ccxl, in lātitudinem clxxx patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia 5 frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscepit. In eō itinere 10 persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciāci, quī eō tempore 15 prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnātē perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suis cōpiīs suoque exercitū 20

illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūsiūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per īndiciū ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt: damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat ut ignī cremārētur. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quī ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ut ē finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suis vīcīsque exūtīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adsciscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant,

Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Ex-
trēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Hel-
10 vētīōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvē-
tiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod
nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur,
exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs ire pate-
rentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem
15 dīcunt quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is
diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne A. Gabīniō cōsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam
nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī, et
quam māximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem
contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam
5 māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō
in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam
iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī
sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius
lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verudoctius prīncipem locum ob-
10 tinēbant, quī dīcerent sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō
iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habē-
rent nūllum: rogāre ut ēius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat.
Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum
exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum mis-
15 sum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō
animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, tem-
perātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut
spatium intercēdere posset dum mīlitēs quōs imperāverat
convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit diem sē ad dēliberandum
20 sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque
quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen
Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanō-
rum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem novem mū-
5 rum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit.
Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit,
quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre pos-

sit. Ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ullī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnēntur, prohibētūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minimā altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorigis filiā in mātirimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trāseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentariīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiā māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēducit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūri-

15 bus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt
5 rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, liberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessariī et cōsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē
10 dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessionēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi
15 statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōsumptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus iūctīs trānsībant. Ubi per
5 plōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs
10 adgressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvītās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīssset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōsulem
15 interfēcerat et eiūs exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve

cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars civitātis Helvētiaē insīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās sed etiam prīvātās iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem 20 proeliō quō Cassium interfēcerant.

ANNOTATED TEXT

CAESAR, I, CHAPTERS 13-29.

CAESAR CROSSES THE SAÔNE.—THE HELVETII SEND AN EMBASSY

NOTE.—The meaning of new words is given in the general vocabulary.

13. Hōc proeliō factō,¹ reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum ² cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū ³ commōtī, cum id quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent,⁴ illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, 5 lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgatiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat.⁵

Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret,⁶ in eam partem itūrōs ⁷ atque ibi futūrōs ⁷ Helvētiōs ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset ⁸ atque esse 10 voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur ⁹ et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod ¹⁰ imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī 15 tribueret ¹¹ aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ¹² ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent ¹³ quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ¹⁴ ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī

20 et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

NOTES

- ¹ See 279. ² See 241. ³ See 393. ⁴ *ut . . . trānsīrent* is in apposition with *id.* See 430. ⁵ The Romans under Cassius were defeated by the Helvetii 107 B.C. ⁶ See 548. ⁷ Supply *esse*. ⁸ In the direct discourse addressed to Caesar this would be *cōstitueris*, a future perfect. A verb in this tense in a subordinate clause becomes pluperfect subjunctive in the change from direct to indirect discourse. ⁹ *he should remember*; in direct discourse this would be *reminiscere*, an imperative. See 548. ¹⁰ *As to the fact that.* ¹¹ *nē tribueret*, *he should not attribute it.* ¹² Refers to the Helvetii. ¹³ A result clause. See 399. ¹⁴ *nē . . . committeret*, *he should not allow it to happen*, etc.

TRANSLATE ¹

1. If a bridge shall be built over the Saône, the army will be led across. 2. He says that if a bridge shall be built over the Saône, the army will be led across. 3. When the ambassadors came to Caesar, Divico spoke for ² them. 4. The ambassadors came to make peace. 5. Did Caesar remember the former valor of the Helvetii?

CAESAR'S REPLY TO DIVICO

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Eō ¹ sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, ² quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīī commemorāssent memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre quō minus meritō populī Romānī accidissent; ³ quī sī ⁴ alicūius iniūriāe ⁵ sibi cōnsciūs ⁶ fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō ⁷ dēceptum, ⁸ quod neque commissum ⁸ ā sē intellexeret quā rē timēret, neque sine causā timendum ⁹ putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num ¹⁰ etiam recentium

¹ The English-Latin vocabulary does not give the meaning of new words used in the translation exercises of Chapters 13-20. The Latin word must be recalled from the preceding text, upon which these sentences are based.

² *loquor prō.*

iniuriarum, quod eō invītō ¹¹ iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allo- ¹⁰ brogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod ¹² suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne iniuriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōsuēsse ¹³ enim deōs immortalēs, quō ¹⁴ gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ¹⁵ ulciscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi ¹⁵ dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduōs dē iniuriīs quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allo- ²⁰ brogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs institūtōs esse utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōsuērint; ēius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

25

NOTES

- ¹ *the*, with a comparative. ² *Eō . . . darī*, he had the less hesitation.
³ *eō gravius . . . accidissent*, he was the more incensed in that they had not happened through the fault of the Roman people. ⁴ *quī sī = et sī is*.
⁵ See 515. ⁶ See 514. ⁷ *by this*. ⁸ Supply *esse*. ⁹ See 481.
¹⁰ See 499. *num . . . posse?* could he cease to remember? etc. ¹¹ See 279. ¹² *Quod*, the fact that. *Quod . . . admīrārentur*, subject of *pertinēre*.
¹³ The English order is: *Enim immortalēs deōs cōsuēsse interdum concēdere secundiōrēs rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem hīs, quōs . . . velint, quō . . . doleant*. ¹⁴ See 199. ¹⁵ To whom does *sibi* refer?

TRANSLATE

1. He remembered the facts that Divico related. 2. We are not conscious of any wrong. 3. Do you think we should fear without cause? 4. It happens that they boast of their victory. 5. The ancestors of the Helvetii were not accustomed to give hostages.

A CAVALRY SKIRMISH

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit quī videant¹ quās in
 5 partēs hostēs iter faciant.² Quī cupidius³ novissimum agmen īsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī⁴ Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus⁵ tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant,⁶ audācius subsistere nōn
 10 numquam et novissimō agmine⁷ proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat⁸ in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs,⁹ pābulatiōnibus populatiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum
 15 primum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs milibus passuum interesset.¹⁰

NOTES

- ¹ See 199. ² See 502. ³ *too eagerly.* ⁴ *elated.* ⁵ See 74.
⁶ From prōpellō. ⁷ Locative abl. ⁸ *held it sufficient.* ⁹ See 448.
¹⁰ See 399.

TRANSLATE

1. Caesar has ordered the lieutenant to move the camp.
 2. The camp will be moved the third hour. 3. Having moved the camp, the soldiers began to lay waste the fields.
 4. I fear that the cavalry battle will not be favorable¹ to our (men). 5. The messenger said that a few of our (men) fell, because the position² was not favorable.³

THE HAEDUI FAIL TO FURNISH GRAIN

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum¹ quod essent publicē pollicitī flāgitāre.² Nam propter frīgora,

¹ *secundus.*² *locus.*³ *aliēnus.*

quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta ³ in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli ⁴ quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem ⁵ frūmentō ⁵ quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat proptereā ⁶ minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētīi āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ⁷ ex diē dūcere ⁸ Haeduōs; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicere.² Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre quō diē frūmentum ¹⁰ mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātūi ⁸ praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, ¹⁵ quod, cum neque emī ⁹ neque ex agrīs sūmī ⁹ posset,¹⁰ tam necēssariō ¹² tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō ¹¹ etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

2c

NOTES

¹ See 534. ² See 232. ³ Notice the plural form, and the special meaning. ⁴ See 385. ⁵ See 360. ⁶ Translate **proptereā** with **quod**, after **poterat**. ⁷ **Diem . . . Haeduōs**: *Day after day the Haedui kept putting him off*. ⁸ See 379. ⁹ Passive present infinitive. ¹⁰ The subject is **frūmentum**, to be supplied. ¹¹ See 312. ¹² *critical*.

TRANSLATE

1. The Haedui had elected Liscus (as) magistrate.¹ 2. Caesar wishes to use the grain which has been conveyed by ships. 3. The Haedui promise to give Caesar grain. 4. Why ² do not the Haedui bring the grain? 5. It is necessary to call the chiefs together in order to find out why the Haedui do not bring ³ the grain.

¹ See 532.² *cūr*, adv., *why*?³ See 502.

THE EXPLANATION OF LISCUS

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod ¹ antea tacuerat prōpōnit: Esse ² nōnnūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, ³ quī prīvātīm plūs possint ³ quam ipsī magistrātus. Hōs sēditiōsā atque
 5 improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrere nē frūmentum cōferant ⁴ quod dēbeant: praestāre, ⁵ sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam ⁶ Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvēcīos superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs ⁷ libertātem
 10 sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē ⁸ coērcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, ⁹ quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārīt, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcērīt, ¹⁰ et ob eam causam quam diū potuerīt tacuisse.

NOTES

¹ Pronoun, with antecedent *id* to be supplied. ² See 548. The subject is *nōnnūllōs*. ³ See 459. ⁴ *nē cōferant*, *from bringing*. ⁵ Used impersonally, *it is better*. ⁶ *Than*. ⁷ Dative case, governed by *ēreptūrī*, *take away from the Haedui*. ⁸ Refers to the speaker. ⁹ *Quīn etiam*, *furthermore*. ¹⁰ See 502.

TRANSLATE

1. There were some whose influence was very great. 2. Although Liscus was a magistrate, yet he could not restrain these men. 3. If Liscus had kept silent, Caesar would not have been informed. 4. Do ¹ not take away liberty from the Haedui.² 5. Our plans must not be reported to the enemy.

DUMNORIX, THE HAEDUAN

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciāci frātre, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesenti-

¹ See 543.² See note 7, above.

bus¹ eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō² ea quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit liberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse³ vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem,⁴ summā audāciā,⁵ māgnā apud plēbem propter liberālītatem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum.⁶ Complūrēs annōs portōria⁷ reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia⁸ parvō pretiō redēmp̄ta habēre,⁹ proptereā quod illō licente contrā¹⁰ licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse⁹ et facultātēs ad largiendum¹⁰ māgnās comparāsse; māgnū numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre⁹; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finitimās cīvitatēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā¹¹ 15 mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātē¹² et propinquās suās nūptum¹³ in aliās cīvitatēs collocāsse. Favēre¹⁴ et cupere Helvetiīs propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse¹⁵ etiam suō nōmine¹⁶ Caesarem et Rō- 20 mānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honoris sit restitūtus. Sī quid¹⁷ accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem¹⁸ per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī¹⁹ venīre; imperiō²⁰ populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam 25 habeat grātiā, dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum,²¹ initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātūī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat); eōrum fugā reliquum 30 esse equitātum perterritum.

NOTES

- ¹ *in the presence of many.* See 279. ² Supply *eō, him.* ³ Supply *haec* as subject. ⁴ *Ipsum . . . Dumnorīgem: Dumnorix is the man.*
⁵ See 464. ⁶ See 516. ⁷ *customs-duties.* ⁸ *taxes.* ⁹ *Dumnorīgem* is the subject. ¹⁰ See 239. ¹¹ *causā* after a genitive means *for the sake, for the purpose.* ¹² *sorōrem ex mātē, half-sister* (on the mother's side). ¹³ See 411 and 415. ¹⁴ See 471. ¹⁵ A defective verb. See

App. (43). ¹⁶ *on his own account.* ¹⁷ Indefinite pronoun. ¹⁸ See 344.
¹⁹ See 241. ²⁰ *Under the sway.* ²¹ *quod . . . factum, in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry battle fought a few days before.*

TRANSLATE

1. When the conference¹ had been broken up (dismissed), Caesar detained Liscus. 2. Caesar perceived that Liscus was not a friend of Dumnorix, the Haeduan. 3. The taxes of the Haedui will be bought up by Dumnorix at a small price. 4. It is said that many Haeduans were desirous of a revolution. 5. If Dumnorix had not been in command of the cavalry, the battle would not have been unsuccessful.

CAESAR SUMMONS DIVICIACUS, THE BROTHER OF DUMNORIX

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod¹ per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrasset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniussū suō et civitātis sed etiam
 5 inscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū² Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut civitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat,³ quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, sum-
 10 mam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam⁴ quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet, et cotidiānis interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Procillum, prīncipem
 15 Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui⁵ summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur; simul com-
 monefacit quae ipsō praesente⁶ in conciliō Gallōrum dē

¹ See 279.

Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit; petit atque hortātūr ut sine ēius offēsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cōgnitā, statuāt, vel 20 cīvītātem statuere iubeat.

NOTES

¹ The four clauses beginning with **quod** explain **rēs**. See 430. ² Liscus.
³ *One fact stood in opposition.* ⁴ See 472. ⁵ **cui . . . habēbat**, *in whom he placed the greatest confidence in all matters.* ⁶ See **plūribus prae-sentibus**, chap. 18.

TRANSLATE

1. Caesar did not decide about the punishment of Dumnorix until he had summoned (called) his brother.
 2. Caesar sent a messenger to summon Diviciacus. 3. Who was the messenger whom Caesar sent? 4. He thinks that Procillus will be Caesar's interpreter. 5. He thought that Procillus would be Caesar's interpreter.

THE PLEA OF DIVICIACUS

20. Dīviciācus, multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus, obsecrāre coepit ¹ nē quid gravius ² in frātre statuaret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris ³ capere, ⁴ proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adolē- 5 scentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ⁵ ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā sed paene ad perniciem suam ūteretur. Sēsē tamen et ⁶ amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne volgī commovērī. Quod ⁷ sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum 10 tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. ⁸ Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsolātus rogat finem ōrandī faciat; ⁹ tantī ¹⁰ ēius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit ¹¹ utī et reī pū- 15 blicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī ac precibus

condōnet.¹² Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus
 20 omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita¹³ sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre¹⁴ dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

NOTES

- ¹ See App. (43). ² too severe. ³ See 385. ⁴ nec . . . capere, no one was more grieved than he on account of it. What is the literal translation?
⁵ See 360. ⁶ both. ⁷ And. ⁸ futūrum esse utī āverterentur, a phrase used instead of the future passive infinitive of āvertō. Translate: for this reason the hearts of all the Gauls would be turned from him.
⁹ An imperative when addressed to Diviciacus; therefore subjunctive when quoted, as here. See 548, note. ¹⁰ so great, a genitive of indefinite value.
¹¹ tanti . . . ostendit, he declares that his influence with him is so great.
¹² condōnāre, pardon (something, direct obj.), for the sake of (something, indirect obj.). ¹³ the past (things bygone).

TRANSLATE

1. No one¹ was more grieved than Diviciacus. 2. Dumnorix increased (in influence) through the popularity of his brother. 3. Procillus spoke with Dumnorix on account of his knowledge² of the Gallic³ language. 4. The soldiers did not know many words of the Gallic language. 5. They will learn more Gallic words if they remain at⁴ Geneva.

CAESAR'S PREPARATIONS FOR A BATTLE

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hōstēs sub¹ monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis esset¹ nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus, quī⁸ cōgnōscerent² mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse.³
 5 Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō⁴ praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant, sum-

¹ Nēmō.² scientia, -ae, f.³ Gallicus, -a, -um.⁴ See 445, c.

mun iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsili¹ sit² ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī rei militāris peritissimus habē-¹⁰ bātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

NOTES

- ¹ See 502. ² See 199. ³ The subject is **ascēsum**, to be supplied.
⁴ *with the power of.* ⁵ A predicate genitive of the whole. See 518.
⁶ **quid . . . sit**, *what his plan is.* ⁷ *at the foot of.* ⁸ Supply the antecedent **eōs**.

TRANSLATE

1. What is the nature of the mountain? 2. The scouts say that the mountain, at the foot of which the enemy have encamped,¹ is not high. 3. The soldiers are ready to climb² the mountain. 4. Having sent the scouts ahead, Caesar followed with the rest of the legions. 5. There is no doubt that Labienus was considered experienced in military matters.³

THE ERROR OF CONSIDIUS

22. Prīmā lūce,¹ cum summus mōns ā Labiēno tenērētur,² ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīgentis passibus³ abesset, neque, ut⁴ postea ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut⁴ erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō¹⁰ tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs

¹ See 548. ² See 241. ³ Use the singular. What case?

exspectābat proeliōque⁵ abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē⁶
 per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī
 et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōsidium timōre perter-
 15 ritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō⁷ sibi renūntiāsse. Eō
 diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia pas-
 suum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

NOTES

¹ Primā lūce, at daybreak.
 ut is followed by an indicative. See 556, 6.
 late in the day.

² See 370.

³ See 311.

⁵ See 448.

⁴ Notice that
⁶ Multō diē,

⁷ prō vīsō, as if seen.

TRANSLATE

1. We shall hold the-top-of the mountain, until the
 general comes. 2. The captives said that the arrival of
 Labienus was not yet known. 3. Caesar is about to draw
 up a line-of-battle. 4. We must make¹ an attack on the
 enemy from all sides. 5. Although Considius had been in
 many battles, yet he was thoroughly frightened before² the
 battle with the Helvetii.

CAESAR GOES TO BIBRACTE FOR SUPPLIES

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēi,¹ quod omnīnō bīduum supererat
 cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret,² et quod ā
 Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō,
 nōn amplius milibus passuum xviii aberat, rei frūmen-
 5 tāriae prōspiciendum³ exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit
 ac Bibracte⁴ ire contendit. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemilī,
 decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Hel-
 vētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē
 exīstimārent,⁵ eō magis, quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occu-
 10 pātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō,⁶ quod rē⁷ frūmen-
 tāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque

¹ What voice must be used in Latin? See 478. ² ante.

itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac
laccessere coepērunt.

NOTES

¹ *Postridiē eius diēi, the next day after that.* ² What is the subject
of *oportēret*? ³ See 481. ⁴ See 445, a. ⁵ See 465, 1. ⁶ See
393. ⁷ See 448; *rēs frūmentāria, supplies.*

TRANSLATE

1. On the next day the army marched twenty miles.
2. We shall reach ¹ Bibracte within ² five hours. 3. Caesar
went to Bibracte for-the-purpose of (getting) supplies.
4. When the enemy were informed of this fact, they
changed their plan and harassed our men. 5. Did ³ the
Helvetians think they had terrified the Romans?

FURTHER PREPARATIONS FOR BATTLE

24. Postquam id animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in
proximum collem subducit equitātumque quī sustinēret ¹
hostium impetum mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō ² tri-
plicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārū;³
sed in summo ⁴ iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre ⁵
proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī,⁵ ac tōtum
montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās ⁶ in ūnum
locum cōnferrī, et eum ⁷ ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnsti-
terant ⁸ mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs
secūtī, impedīmenta ⁶ in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōn- 10
fertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub
prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

NOTES

¹ See 199. ² *the middle of, half way up.* ³ See 464. ⁴ *the top of.*
⁵ Depends on *iussit*. ⁶ *sarcinae*, the *packs* carried by the soldiers them-
selves, like our knapsacks; *impedīmenta*, the *heavy baggage*, tents, pro-
visions, etc., carried by horses and mules. ⁷ Supply *locum*. ⁸ See
556, 1, a.

TRANSLATE

1. Caesar had six legions in all. 2. Two legions are to guard the baggage.¹ 3. Caesar ordered Labienus to lead the troops to the next hill. 4. The scout reports that the enemy will form a phalanx and advance close to ² our line. 5. Let ³ the whole mountain be filled with men that the Gauls may be terrified.

THE BATTLE

25. Caesar primum suō ¹ deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commisit. Mīlītēs ē locō superiōre pilīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs ² māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedimentō ³ quod, ⁴ plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfixīs et conligātīs, cum ferrum sē inflēxisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut ⁵ diū ⁶ iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ⁷ ēmittere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et ⁸ pedem referre ¹² et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum, eō ⁹ sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv ¹⁵ āgmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō adgressī circumvenīre; et id cōspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipartītō intulērunt: ¹⁰ prima et secunda aciēs, ²⁰ ut victīs ac submōtīs resisteret; ¹¹ tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

NOTES

¹ Supply equō remōtō. ² See 525. ³ See 524. ⁴ The subject of erat is quod neque ēvellere . . . poterant. ⁵ so that many. ⁶ Modi-

¹ for a guard to the baggage. See 524 and 525. ² close to, sub. ³ See 562 b.

fies iactātō. ⁷ See 448. ⁸ *both*. ⁹ Adverb. ¹⁰ *conversa . . .*
intulērunt, *faced about and charged in two divisions*. What is the literal
translation. ¹¹ See 471. ¹² *pedem referre*, *retreat*. Notice the num-
ber of times the ablative absolute is used in the chapter.

TRANSLATE

1. Why were the soldiers' horses removed out of sight?
2. Did Caesar encourage his men before he joined battle?
3. Throw the javelins, soldiers, that you may break up the phalanx of the Gauls.
4. Do not draw your swords until the signal is given.
5. There were some who were not able to throw aside the shield from the arm.

DEFEAT OF THE HELVETII

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācrit̄er pūgnātum est.¹
Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent,
alterī ² sē. ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ³ ad
impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc
tōtō proeliō, cum ⁴ ab hōrā septimā ⁵ ad vesperum pūgnā-
tum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam
noctem ⁶ etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā
quod prō vāllō carrōs obiēc̄erant ⁷ et ē locō ⁸ superiōre in
nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant,⁷ et nōnnūllī inter carrōs
rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant ⁷ nostrōsque vol-
nerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedimentīs castrīs-
que nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē
filīis captus ⁹ est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia
cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt:
nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō in finēs Lingonum
diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum ¹⁰ et propter volnera mīlitum
et propter sepultūram occisōrum nostrī trīdium morātī
eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūn-
tiōsque mīsīt nē ¹¹ eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī

20 sī ¹² iūvissent, sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum.
Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

NOTES

¹ See 428. ² The Helvetii. ³ The Boii and Tulingi. ⁴ See 569.
⁵ About one o'clock. ⁶ *Till late in the night.* ⁷ Notice three compounds of **iaciō**: **obiciō**, *throw in front*, **coniciō**, *throw from above*, **subiciō**, *throw, or thrust, from below*. ⁸ *position.* ⁹ See 285. ¹⁰ See 465. ¹¹ *to warn them not to.* ¹² **quī sī**, *for if they.*

TRANSLATE

1. The Helvetii fought as ¹ fiercely as they could. 2. They feared that the Romans would take away ² their liberty. 3. They thought they could persuade the Lingones to aid ³ them. 4. Do not aid the Helvetii by (giving) grain. 5. If you aid them, I shall hold you in the same regard (place) as (I do) them.

SURRENDER OF THE HELVETII

27. Helvētīi omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī ¹ cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petissent, atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent ²
5 suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pārūērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent ³ poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur ⁴ et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi ēius pāgī quī
10 Verbigenus ⁵ appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī nē armīs tradītis supplicīō adficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitudīne dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse existimārent, prīmā nocte ē cas-

¹ **quam.** See 304. ² **ēripiō.** ³ In what mood must this be expressed?

trīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

NOTES

¹ Quī cum = Et cum eī. ² Subjunctive by *attraction*; that is, because it depends upon the subjunctive *iussisset*. ³ Subjunctive, because it is *quoted* from the words used in making the demand. ⁴ See 472, 3. ⁵ See 105.

TRANSLATE

1. We hear that ambassadors have been sent by the Gauls because there is no hope of safety. 2. They are going ¹ to speak with the general in-behalf-of ² those whom he has conquered. 3. The hostages and slaves, who have escaped, must be brought back.³ 4. The slaves attempted to reach the Rhine. 5. We think we shall be punished if we give up our arms.

THE HELVETII RETURN TO THEIR OWN TERRITORY

28. Quod ubi ¹ Caesar rescit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs ² utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi ³ pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs⁴ in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionem accēpit.⁵ Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs 5 suōs, unde ⁶ erant profectī, revertī iussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus ⁷ āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent.⁸ Allobrogibus imperāvit ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs ⁹ oppida vīcōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde ⁶ 10 Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae ¹⁰ Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs ¹¹ petentibus Haeduīs,¹² quod

¹ See 477.² prō.³ redūcō.

15 ēgregiā virtūte ¹³ erant cōgnitī, ut ¹⁴ in fīnibus suis conlocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in parem iūris lībertātisque condiōnem atque ¹⁵ ipsī erant recēpērunt.

NOTES

¹ **Quod ubi** = **Et ubi id.** ² The antecedent of **quōrum.** For case of **hīs,** see 471. ³ See 525. ⁴ **reductōs . . . habuit,** a mild way of stating that he slew them. ⁵ **in deditiōnem accēpit,** *accepted the surrender of.* ⁶ A relative adverb. ⁷ *field products.* ⁸ See 459. ⁹ The Helvetii. ¹⁰ Dative, why? ¹¹ Object of **conlocārent,** put first for emphasis. ¹² **petentibus Haeduis concessit,** *to the Haedui, at their request, he granted.* ¹³ See 464. ¹⁴ **Ut . . . conlocārent,** object of **concessit.** ¹⁵ **parem atque,** *the same as.*

TRANSLATE

1. Having made peace with the Romans, the Helvetii returned home. 2. Let ¹ us restore the villages that we have burned. 3. Let the Haedui give part of their territory to the Boii. 4. Since the Helvetii did not have a supply of grain, their neighbors helped ² them. 5. The Germans have been informed of the fertility of the Gallic fields, and will cross the Rhine to get possession of them.

THE RECORDS OF THE HELVETII

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōfectae ¹ et ad Caesarem relātae quibus in tabulīs ² nōminātīm ratiō ³ cōfecta erat, quī numerus ⁴ domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, ⁵ et item sēparātīm ⁶ puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlia xxxvi, Latobrigōrum xiiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Bōiōrum xxxii; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent ⁵ ad mīlia xcii. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia ccclxviii.

¹ See 562.² iuvō.

Eōrum quī domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar im- 10
perāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

NOTES

¹ *made out, or written.* ² Notice the repetition of the antecedent of **quibus** in the relative clause. ³ *account.* ⁴ **quī numerus**, *showing what number.* See 502. ⁵ See 459. ⁶ Subject of a verb understood, meaning *were recorded.*

TRANSLATE

1. The Helvetii had made out their records in Greek letters. 2. Why did they use Greek letters? 3. The Helvetii had fought very bravely, but many were killed. 4. A census was taken (had) in order that Caesar might find out how many ¹ men had returned ² home. 5. Caesar conquered the Helvetii in one battle during the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.³

¹ *how many, quot.*

² See 502.

³ See 279.

APPENDIX

NOUNS

First Declension.

Porta, F., gate.

SINGULAR.

NOM.	porta
GEN.	portae
DAT.	portae
ACC.	portam
ABL.	portā

PLURAL.

portae
portārum
portis
portās
portīs

2.

Second Declension.

*Amicus, M.,
friend.*

*Puer, M.,
boy.*

*Ager, M.,
field.*

*Vir, M.,
man.*

*Bellum, N.,
war.*

SINGULAR.

N.	amīcus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
G.	amīcī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
D.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
Ac.	amīcum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
Ab.	amīcō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō

PLURAL.

N.	amīci	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
G.	amīcōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
D.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs
Ac.	amīcōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	bella
Ab.	amīcīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	bellīs

Third Declension.

3. Cōsul, M., <i>consul.</i>	Legiō, F., <i>legion.</i>	Mercātor, M., <i>merchant.</i>	Pater, M., <i>father.</i>
---------------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------------	------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. cōsul	legiō	mercātor	pater
G. cōsulis	legiōnis	mercātōris	patris
D. cōsuli	legiōnī	mercātōrī	patri
Ac. cōsulem	legiōnem	mercātōrem	patrem
Ab. cōsule	legiōne	mercātōre	patre

PLURAL.

N. cōsulēs	legiōnēs	mercātōrēs	patrēs
G. cōsulum	legiōnum	mercātōrum	patrum
D. cōsulibus	legiōnibus	mercātōribus	patribus
Ac. cōsulēs	legiōnēs	mercātōrēs	patrēs
Ab. cōsulibus	legiōnibus	mercātōribus	patribus

4. Lēx, F., <i>law.</i>	Princeps, M., <i>chief.</i>	Miles, M., <i>soldier.</i>	Civitas, F., <i>state.</i>
----------------------------	--------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. lēx	princeps	miles	civitas
G. lēgis	principis	militis	civitātis
D. lēgī	principī	militī	civitātī
Ac. lēgem	principem	militem	civitātem
Ab. lēge	principe	militē	civitāte

PLURAL.

N. lēgēs	principēs	militēs	civitātēs
G. lēgum	principum	militum	civitātum
D. lēgibus	principibus	militibus	civitātibus
Ac. lēgēs	principēs	militēs	civitātēs
Ab. lēgibus	principibus	militibus	civitātibus

5. Flūmen, N., <i>river.</i>	Opus N., <i>work.</i>	Tempus, N., <i>time.</i>	Caput, N., <i>head.</i>
---------------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------	----------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. flūmen	opus	tempus	caput
G. flūminis	operis	temporis	capitis
D. flūminī	operī	temporī	capitī
Ac. flūmen	opus	tempus	caput
Ab. flūmine	opere	tempore	capito

PLURAL.

N. flūmina	opera	tempora	capita
G. flūminum	operum	temporum	capitum
D. flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	capitibus
Ac. flūmina	opera	tempora	capita
Ab. flūminibus	operibus	temporibus	capitibus

6. Hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	Nāvis, F., <i>ship.</i>	Mōns, M., <i>mountain.</i>	Nox, F., <i>night.</i>
--------------------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. hostis	nāvis	mōns	nox
G. hostis	nāvis	montis	noctis
D. hostī	nāvī	montī	noctī
Ac. hostem	nāvim, nāvem	montem	noctem
Ab. hoste	nāvī, nāvo	monte	nocte

PLURAL.

N. hostēs	nāvēs	montēs	noctēs
G. hostium	nāvium	montium	noctium
D. hostibus	nāvibus	montibus	noctibus
Ac. hostēs -is	nāvēs -is	montēs -is	noctēs -is
Ab. hostibus	nāvibus	montibus	noctibus

7. Cubile, N., *couch*.Animal, N., *animal*.

	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
N.	cubīle	cubīlia		animal	animālia
G.	cubīlis	cubīlium		animālis	animālium
D.	cubīlī	cubīlibus		animālī	animālibus
Ac.	cubīle	cubīlia		animal	animālia
Ab.	cubīlī	cubīlibus		animālī	animālibus

Fourth Declension.

8. Manus, F.,
hand.Lacus, M.,
lake.Domus, F.,
house.Cornū, N.,
horn.

SINGULAR.

N.	manus	lacus	domus	cornū
G.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	cornūs(-ū)
D.	manuī	lacuī	domuī	cornū
Ac.	manum	lacum	domum	cornū
Ab.	manū	lacū	domō(-ū)	cornū

PLURAL.

N.	manūs	lacūs	domūs	cornua
G.	manuum	lacuum	domuum	cornuum
D.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	cornibus
Ac.	manūs	lacūs	domōs(-ūs)	cornua
Ab.	manibus	lacubus	domibus	cornibus

Fifth Declension.

9. Diēs, M., *day*.Rēs, F., *thing*.

	SING.	PLUR.		SING.	PLUR.
N.	diēs	diēs		rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum		rei	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus		rei	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs		rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus		rē	rēbus

Special Nouns.

10. <i>Deus</i> , M., <i>god.</i>	<i>Senex</i> , M., <i>old man.</i>	<i>Vis</i> , F., <i>force.</i>	<i>Iter</i> , N., <i>way.</i>
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. <i>deus</i>	<i>senex</i>	<i>vis</i>	<i>iter</i>
G. <i>dei</i>	<i>senis</i>	<i>vis</i>	<i>itineris</i>
D. <i>deō</i>	<i>senī</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>itineri</i>
Ac. <i>deum</i>	<i>senem</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>iter</i>
Ab. <i>deō</i>	<i>sene</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>itinere</i>

PLURAL.

N. <i>dei, dii, di</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
G. <i>deōrum, deūm</i>	<i>senum</i>	<i>vīrium</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
D. <i>deīs, diīs, dīs</i>	<i>senibus</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
Ac. <i>deōs</i>	<i>senēs</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
Ab. <i>deīs, diīs, dīs</i>	<i>senibus</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

ADJECTIVES

First and Second Declensions.

11. *Māgnus*, *large*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>māgnus</i> ¹	<i>māgna</i>	<i>māgnum</i>	<i>māgnī</i>	<i>māgnae</i>	<i>māgna</i>
G. <i>māgnī</i>	<i>māgnae</i>	<i>māgnī</i>	<i>māgnōrum</i>	<i>māgnārum</i>	<i>māgnōrum</i>
D. <i>māgnō</i>	<i>māgnae</i>	<i>māgnō</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>
Ac. <i>māgnum</i>	<i>māgnam</i>	<i>māgnum</i>	<i>māgnōs</i>	<i>māgnās</i>	<i>māgna</i>
Ab. <i>māgnō</i>	<i>māgnā</i>	<i>māgnō</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>	<i>māgnīs</i>

Liber, *free*.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>liber</i>	<i>libera</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>libera</i>
G. <i>liberī</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberī</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>	<i>liberārum</i>	<i>liberōrum</i>
D. <i>liberō</i>	<i>liberae</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>
Ac. <i>liberum</i>	<i>liberam</i>	<i>liberum</i>	<i>liberōs</i>	<i>liberās</i>	<i>libera</i>
Ab. <i>liberō</i>	<i>liberā</i>	<i>liberō</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>	<i>liberīs</i>

¹ Learn the three genders of each case together.

Noster, our.¹

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. noster	nostra	nostrum	nostrī	nostrae	nostra
G. nostrī	nostrae	nostrī	nostrōrum	nostrārum	nostrōrum
D. nostrō	nostrae	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs
AC. nostrum	nostram	nostrum	nostrōs	nostrās	nostra
AB. nostrō	nostrā	nostrō	nostrīs	nostrīs	nostrīs

12. Alius, another.**Alter, the other (of two).**

SINGULAR.					
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
G. alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
D. aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
AC. alium	aliā	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
AB. aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

Neuter, neither.**Ūnus, one.**

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. neuter	neutra	neutrum	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
G. neutrius	neutrius	neutrius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius
D. neutri	neutri	neutri	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
AC. neutrum	neutram	neutrum	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
AB. neutrō	neutrā	neutrō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

13.**Third Declension.****Ācer, sharp.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G. ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
AC. ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (-is)	ācrēs (-is)	ācria
AB. ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

¹ Possessive pronoun, used as an adjective.

Fortis, brave.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
G. fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
D. fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Ac. fortem	forte	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
Ab. fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

Longior, longer.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
G. longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
D. longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
Ac. longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
Ab. longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

Potēns, powerful.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. potēns	potēns	potentēs	potentia
G. potentis	potentis	potentium	potentium
D. potenti	potenti	potentibus	potentibus
Ac. potentem	potēns	potentēs (-īs)	potentia
Ab. potenti (-e)	potenti (-e)	potentibus	potentibus

Vēlōx, swift.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. vēlōx	vēlōx	vēlōcēs	vēlōcia
G. vēlōcis	vēlōcis	vēlōcium	vēlōcium
D. vēlōcī	vēlōcī	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus
Ac. vēlōcem	vēlōx	vēlōcēs (-īs)	vēlōcia
Ab. vēlōcī (-e)	vēlōcī (-e)	vēlōcibus	vēlōcibus

14.

Special Adjectives.

Vetus, old.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
G. <i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
D. <i>veteri</i>	<i>veteri</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
AC. <i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
AB. <i>vetere or -i</i>	<i>vetere or -i</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

Plus, more.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. —	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
G. —	<i>plūris</i>	<i>plūrium</i>	<i>plūrium</i>
D. —	—	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>
AC. —	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrēs</i>	<i>plūra</i>
AB. —	<i>plūre</i>	<i>plūribus</i>	<i>plūribus</i>

*Duo, two.**Trēs, three.*

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N.	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
G.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
D.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
AC.	<i>duōs</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs, trīs</i>	<i>tria</i>
AB.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

15.

Regular Comparison.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>altus, -a, -um, high</i>	<i>altior, -ius</i>	<i>altissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>fortis, -e, brave</i>	<i>fortior, -ius</i>	<i>fortissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>potēns, powerful</i>	<i>potentior, -ius</i>	<i>potentissimus, -a, -um</i>
<i>vēlōx, swift</i>	<i>vēlōcior, -ius</i>	<i>vēlōcissimus, -a, -um</i>

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
acer, ācris, ācre, <i>sharp</i>	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
liber, -era, -erum, <i>free</i>	liberior, -ius	liberrimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
difficilis, -e, <i>difficult</i>	difficilior, -ius	difficillimus, -a, -um
similis, -e <i>like</i>	similior, -ius	simillimus, -a, -um
dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior, -ius	dissimillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e, <i>low</i>	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um
gracilis, -e, <i>slender</i>	gracilior, -ius	gracillimus, -a, -um

16.

Irregular Comparison.

bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>	pēior, pēius	pessimus, -a, -um
māgnus, -a, -um, <i>great</i>	māior, māius,	māximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>	——, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
multī, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>		
parvus, -a, -um, <i>small</i>	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
senex, <i>old</i>	senior	māximus nātū
iūvenis, -e, <i>young</i>	iūnior	minimus nātū
vetus, <i>old</i>	vetustior, -ius	veterrimus, -a, -um
(exterus, <i>outward</i>)	exterior, <i>outer,</i> <i>exterior</i>	extrēmus } <i>outermost</i>
(īferus, <i>below</i>)	īferior, <i>lower</i>	extimus } <i>last</i>
(posterus, <i>following</i>)	posterior, <i>later</i>	īfimus } <i>lowest</i>
(superus, <i>above</i>)	superior, <i>higher</i>	īmus }
		postrēmus } <i>last</i>
		postumus }
		suprēmus } <i>highest</i>
		summus }
[cis, citrā, <i>on this side</i>]	citior, <i>hither</i>	citimus, <i>hithermost</i>
[in, intrā, <i>in, within</i>]	interior, <i>inner</i>	intimus, <i>inmost</i>
[prae, prō, <i>before</i>]	prior, <i>former</i>	primus, <i>first</i>
[prope, <i>near</i>]	propior, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>next</i>
[ultrā, <i>beyond</i>]	ulterior, <i>further</i>	ultimus, <i>furthest</i>

17.

NUMERALS

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBS.
1 ūnus	prīmus	singulī	semel
2 duo	secundus	binī	bis
3 trēs	tertius	ternī (trīnī)	ter
4 quattuor	quārtus	quaternī	quater
5 quīnque	quīntus	quīnī	quīnquiēs
6 sex	sextus	sēnī	sexiēs
7 septem	septimus	septēnī	septiēs
8 octō	octāvus	octōnī	octiēs
9 novem	nōnus	nōvēnī	noviēs
10 decem	decimus	dēnī	deciēs
11 ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī	ūndeciēs
12 duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī	duodeciēs
13 tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī	ter deciēs
14 quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī	quater deciēs
15 quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī	quīnquiēs deciēs
16 sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī	sexiēs deciēs
17 septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī	septiēs deciēs
18 duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī	duodēviciēs
19 ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī	ūndēviciēs
20 vīgintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī	viciēs
21 ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vicēsīmus mus	prī- vicēnī singulī	viciēs semel
22 duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsīmus	duodētrīcēnī	duodētrīciēs
23 ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsīmus	ūndētrīcēnī	ūndētrīciēs
24 trīgintā	trīcēsīmus	trīcēnī	trīciēs
25 quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī	quadrāgiēs
26 quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī	quīnquāgiēs

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBS.
60 sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī	sexāgiēs
70 septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī	septuāgiēs
80 octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī	octōgiēs
90 nonāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī	nōnāgiēs
100 centum	centēsīmus	centēnī	centiēs
101 centum (et) unus	centēsīmus (et) prīmus	centēnī (et) singulī	centiēs semel
200 ducentī	ducentēsīmus	ducēnī	ducentiēs
300 trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecēnī	trecentiēs
400 quadringentī	quadringentē- simus	quadringēnī	quadringentiēs
500 quīgentī	quīgentēsīmus	quīgēnī	quīgentiēs
600 sēscentī	sēscentēsīmus	sēscēnī	sēscentiēs
700 septingentī	septingentēsi- mus	septingēnī	septingentiēs
800 octingentī	octingentēsi- mus	octingēnī	octingentiēs
900 nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī	nōngentiēs
1000 mīlle	mīllēsīmus	singula mīlia	mīlliēs
2000 duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus	bīna mīlia	bis mīlliēs

PRONOUNS

18.		Personal.		Reflexive.			
		Ego, I.		Tū, thou.		Suī, of himself, etc.	
		SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.	SING.	PLU.
N.	ego	nōs		tū	vōs	—	—
G.	meī	nostrum, -trī		tuī	vestrum, -trī	suī	suī
D.	mihi	nōbīs		tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
Ac.	mē	nōs		tē	vōs	sē, sēsē, sē, sēsē	
Ab.	mē	nōbīs		tē	vōbīs	sē, sēsē, sē, sēsē	

19.

Demonstrative.

Hic, this.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
G. <i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
D. <i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
Ac. <i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
Ab. <i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

Iste, that (near you).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>iste</i>	<i>ista</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>ista</i>
G. <i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istius</i>	<i>istōrum</i>	<i>istārum</i>	<i>istōrum</i>
D. <i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
Ac. <i>istum</i>	<i>istam</i>	<i>istud</i>	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>ista</i>
Ab. <i>istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>

Ille, that (yonder).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
G. <i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
D. <i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
Ac. <i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
Ab. <i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

Is, this, that, he, she, it.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. <i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī, iī</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
G. <i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
D. <i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>
Ac. <i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
Ab. <i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>	<i>eīs, iīs</i>

Īdem, the same.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ĭdem	eadem	idem	eīdem	eaedem	eadem
G. ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
D. eidem	eidem	eidem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
Ac. eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Ab. eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

20.

Intensive.**Iipse, self.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
G. ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
D. ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
Ac. ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
Ab. ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

21.

Relative.**Quī, who, which, that.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
G. cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
D. cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Ac. quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Ab. quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

22.

Interrogative.**Quis, who?**

SINGULAR.	
<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. quis	quid
G. cūius	cūius

<i>M. & F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
D. cui	cui
Ac. quem	quid
Ab. quō	quō

The plural of the interrogative **quis** is like that of the relative **qui**.

23.

Indefinite.

Aliquis, some one.

SINGULAR.

<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
N. aliquis (-quī)	aliqua	aliquid (-quod)
G. alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
D. alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac. aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (-quod)
Ab. aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL.

N. aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

VERBS

First Conjugation.

24.

ACTIVE VOICE.—**Laudō, I praise.**PRINCIPAL PARTS : **laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum.**

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
laudō	laudāmus
laudās	laudātis
laudat	laudant

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
laudem	laudēmus
laudēs	laudētis
iaudet	laudent

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

laudābam	laudābāmus
laudābās	laudābātis
laudābat	laudābant

Future.

laudābō	laudābimus
laudābis	laudābitis
laudābit	laudābunt

Perfect.

laudāvī	laudāvimus
laudāvistī	laudāvistis
laudāvit	laudāvērunt(-ēre)

Pluperfect.

laudāveram	laudāverāmus
laudāverās	laudāverātis
laudāverat	laudāverant

Future Perfect.

laudāverō	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i> laudā	laudāte
<i>Fut.</i> laudātō	laudātōte
laudātō	laudantō

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> laudāre
<i>Perf.</i> laudāvisse
<i>Fut.</i> laudātūrus esse

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

laudārem	laudārēmus
laudārēs	laudārētis
laudāret	laudārent

Perfect.

laudāverim	laudāverimus
laudāveris	laudāveritis
laudāverit	laudāverint

Pluperfect.

laudāvissem	laudāvissēmus
laudāvissēs	laudāvissētis
laudāvisset	laudāvissent

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. laudāns *Fut.* laudātūrus

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> laudandī
<i>Dat.</i> laudandō
<i>Acc.</i> laudandum
<i>Abl.</i> laudandō

SUPINE.

Acc. laudātum *Abl.* laudātū

25. PASSIVE VOICE.—*Laudor, I am praised.*PRINCIPAL PARTS : *laudor, laudāri, laudātus sum.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>laudor</i>	<i>laudāmur</i>
<i>laudāris</i>	<i>laudāmini</i>
<i>laudātur</i>	<i>laudantur</i>

Imperfect.

<i>laudābar</i>	<i>laudābāmur</i>
<i>laudābāris (-re)</i>	<i>laudābāmini</i>
<i>laudābātur</i>	<i>laudābantur</i>

Future.

<i>laudābor</i>	<i>laudābimur</i>
<i>laudāberis (-re)</i>	<i>laudābimini</i>
<i>laudābitur</i>	<i>laudābuntur</i>

Perfect.

<i>laudātus sum</i>	<i>laudāti sumus</i>
<i>laudātus es</i>	<i>laudāti estis</i>
<i>laudātus est</i>	<i>laudāti sunt</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>laudātus eram</i>	<i>laudāti erāmus</i>
<i>laudātus erās</i>	<i>laudāti erātis</i>
<i>laudātus erat</i>	<i>laudāti erant</i>

Future Perfect.

<i>laudātus erō</i>	<i>laudāti erimus</i>
<i>laudātus eris</i>	<i>laudāti eritis</i>
<i>laudātus erit</i>	<i>laudāti erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>lauder</i>	<i>laudēmur</i>
<i>laudēris (-re)</i>	<i>laudēmini</i>
<i>laudētur</i>	<i>laudentur</i>

Imperfect.

<i>laudārer</i>	<i>laudārēmur</i>
<i>laudārēris (-re)</i>	<i>laudārēmini</i>
<i>laudārētur</i>	<i>laudārentur</i>

Perfect.

<i>laudātus sim</i>	<i>laudāti simus</i>
<i>laudātus sis</i>	<i>laudāti sitis</i>
<i>laudātus sit</i>	<i>laudāti sint</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>laudātus essem</i>	<i>laudāti essēmus</i>
<i>laudātus essēs</i>	<i>laudāti essētis</i>
<i>laudātus esset</i>	<i>laudāti essent</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. laudāri</i>
<i>Perf. laudātus esse</i>
<i>Fut. laudātum iri</i>

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> laudāre	laudāmini	<i>Perf.</i> laudātus
<i>Fut.</i> laudātor		<i>Fut.</i> laudandus (<i>Gerundive</i>)
laudātor	laudantor	

Second Conjugation.

26. ACTIVE VOICE.—**Moneō, I advise.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS : moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR	PLURAL.
moneō	monēmus	moneam	moneāmus
monēs	monētis	moneās	moneātis
monet	monent	moneat	moneant
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
monēbam	monēbāmus	monērem	monērēmus
monēbās	monēbātis	monērēs	monērētis
monēbat	monēbant	monēret	monērent
<i>Future.</i>			
monēbō	monēbimus		
monēbis	monēbitis		
monēbit	monēbunt		
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
monuī	monuimus	monuerim	monuerimus
monuistī	monuistis	monueris	monueritis
monuit	monuērunt (-ēre)	monuerit	monuerint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
monueram	monuerāmus	monuisset	monuissēmus
monuerās	monuerātis	monuissēs	monuissētis
monuerat	monuerant	monuisset	monuissent

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

monuerō	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i> monē	monēte
<i>Fut.</i> monētō	monētōte
monētō	monentō

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> monēre
<i>Perf.</i> monuisse
<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> monēns	<i>Fut.</i> monitūrus
---------------------	-----------------------

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> monendi
<i>Dat.</i> monendō
<i>Acc.</i> monendum
<i>Abl.</i> monendō

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> monitum	<i>Abl.</i> monitū
---------------------	--------------------

27. PASSIVE VOICE.—*Moneor, I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: moneor, monērī, monitus sum.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

moneor	monēmur
monēris	monēmini
monētur	monentur

Imperfect.

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris (-re)	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

Future.

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis (-re)	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

monear	monēāmur
monēāris (-re)	monēāmini
monēātur	monēantur

Imperfect.

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris (-re)	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
monitus sum	monitī sumus	monitus sim	monitī simus
monitus es	monitī estis	monitus sis	monitī sītis
monitus est	monitī sunt	monitus sit	monitī sint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
monitus eram	monitī erāmus	monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus erās	monitī erātis	monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus erat	monitī erant	monitus esset	monitī essent
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		INFINITIVE.	
monitus erō	monitī erimus	<i>Pres.</i> monērī	
monitus eris	monitī eritis	<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse	
monitus erit	monitī erunt	<i>Fut.</i> monitum īrī	
IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	<i>Perf.</i> monitus	
<i>Pres.</i> monēre	monēmini	<i>Fut.</i> monendus (<i>Gerundive</i>)	
<i>Fut.</i> monētor			
monētor	monentor		

Third Conjugation.

28. ACTIVE VOICE.—**Regō, I rule.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS : regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regō	regimus	regam	regāmus
regis	regitis	regās	regātis
regit	regunt	regat	regant
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
regēbam	regēbāmus	regerem	regerēmus
regēbās	regēbātis	regerēs	regerētis
regēbat	regēbant	regeret	regerent

INDICATIVE.

Future.

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

Perfect.

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect.

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

Future Perfect.

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i> rege	regite
<i>Fut.</i> regitō	regitōte
regitō	reguntō

INFINITIVE.

Pres. regere*Perf.* rēxisse*Fut.* rēctūrus esse

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

rēxerim	rēxerimus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

Pluperfect.

rēxissem	rēxissēmus
rēxissēs	rexissētis
rēxisset	rēxissent

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. regēns*Fut.* rēctūrus

GERUND.

Gen. regendi*Dat.* regendō*Acc.* regendum*Abl.* regendō

SUPINE.

Acc. rēctum*Abl.* rēctū

29.

PASSIVE VOICE.—**Regor**, *I am ruled*.PRINCIPAL PARTS : **regor**, **regī**, **rēctus sum**.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regor	regimur
regēris (-re)	regimini
regitur	reguntur

Imperfect.

regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris (-re)	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

Future.

regar	regēmur
regēris (-re)	regēmini
regētur	regentur

Perfect.

rēctus sum	rēctī sumus
rēctus es	rēctī estis
rēctus est	rēctī sunt

Pluperfect.

rēctus eram	rēctī erāmus
rēctus erās	rēctī erātis
rēctus erat	rēctī erant

Future Perfect.

rēctus erō	rēctī erimus
rēctus eris	rēctī eritis
rēctus erit	rēctī erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regar	regāmur
regāris (-re)	regāmini
regātur	regantur

Imperfect.

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris (-re)	regerēmini
regerētur	regerentur

Perfect.

rēctus sim	rēctī simus
rēctus sis	rēctī sitis
rēctus sit	rēctī sint

Pluperfect.

rēctus essem	rēctī essēmus
rēctus essēs	rēctī essētis
rēctus esset	rēctī essent

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> regī
<i>Perf.</i> rēctus esse
<i>Fut.</i> rēctum iri

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	
<i>Pres.</i> regere	regimini	<i>Perf.</i> rēctus
<i>Fut.</i> regitor		<i>Fut.</i> regendus (<i>Gerundive</i>)
regitor	reguntor	

Third Conjugation In -iō.

30. ACTIVE VOICE.—Capiō, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiō	capimus	capiam	capiamus
capis	capitis	capias	capiatīs
capit	capiunt	capiat	capiant
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
capiebam	capiebāmus	caperem	caperēmus
capiebās	capiebātis	caperēs	caperētis
capiebāt	capiebant	caperet	caperent
<i>Future.</i>			
capiam	capiemus	.	
capies	capietis		
capiet	capient		
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
cēpī	cēpimus	cēperim	cēperimus
cēpisti	cēpistis	cēperis	cēperitis
cēpit	cēpērunt (-ēre)	cēperit	cēperint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
cēperam	cēperāmus	cēpissē	cēpissēmus
cēperās	cēperātis	cēpissēs	cēpissētis
cēperat	cēperant	cēpisset	cēpissent

INDICATIVE.

Future Perfect.

cēperō	cēperimus
cēperis	cēperitis
cēperit	cēperint

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i> cape	capite
<i>Fut.</i> capitō	capitōte
capitō	capiuntō

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> capere
<i>Perf.</i> cēpisse
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> capiēns
<i>Fut.</i> captūrus

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> capiendi
<i>Dat.</i> capiendō
<i>Acc.</i> capiendum
<i>Abl.</i> capiendō

SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> captum	<i>Abl.</i> captū
--------------------	-------------------

31.

PASSIVE VOICE.—Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: capior, capī, captus sum

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

capior	capimur
caperis	capimini
capitur	capiuntur

Imperfect.

capiebar	capiebāmur
capiebāris (-re)	capiebāmini
capiebātur	capiebantur

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

capiar	capiamur
capīāris (-re)	capiāmini
capiātur	capiantur

Imperfect.

caperer	caperēmur
caperēris (-re)	caperēmini
caperētur	caperentur

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Future.</i>			
capiar	capiēmur		
capiēris (-re)	capiēmini		
capiētur	capiuntur		
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
captus sum	capti sumus	captus sim	capti simus
captus es	capti estis	captus sis	capti sitis
captus est	capti sunt	captus sit	capti sint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
captus eram	capti erāmus	captus essem	capti essēmus
captus erās	capti erātis	captus essēs	capti essētis
captus erat	capti erant	captus esset	capti essent
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		INFINITIVE.	
captus erō	capti erimus	<i>Pres.</i> capi	
captus eris	capti eritis	<i>Perf.</i> captus esse	
captus erit	capti erunt	<i>Fut.</i> captum iri	
IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	<i>Perf.</i> captus	
<i>Pres.</i> capere	capimini	<i>Fut.</i> capiendus (<i>Gerundive</i>)	
<i>Fut.</i> capitor			
capitor	capiuntor		

Fourth Conjugation.

32

ACTIVE VOICE.—Audio, I hear.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : audiō, audire, audiṽi, auditum.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audimus	audiam	audiāmus
audis	auditis	audiās	audiātis
audit	audiunt	audiat	audiant

INDICATIVE.

Imperfect.

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

Future.

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

Perfect.

audivī	audivimus
audivistī	audivistis
audivit	audivērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect.

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

Future Perfect.

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Pres.</i> audi	audite
<i>Fut.</i> auditō	auditōte
auditō	audiuntō

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> audire
<i>Perf.</i> audisse
<i>Fut.</i> auditurus esse

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Imperfect.

audirem	audirēmus
audires	audirētis
audiret	audirent

Perfect.

audiverim	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit	audiverint

Pluperfect.

audivissem	audivissēmus
audivissēs	audivissētis
audivisset	audivissent

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audiēns*Fut.* auditurus

GERUND.

Gen. audiendī*Dat.* audiendō*Acc.* audiendum*Abl.* audiendō

SUPINE.

Acc. auditum*Abl.* auditū

33. PASSIVE VOICE.—*Audior, I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *audior, audīrī, audītus sum.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>audior</i>	<i>audīmur</i>
<i>audiris</i>	<i>audīmini</i>
<i>auditor</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>

Imperfect.

<i>audiēbar</i>	<i>audiēbāmur</i>
<i>audiēbāris (-re)</i>	<i>audiēbāmini</i>
<i>audiēbātur</i>	<i>audiēbantur</i>

Future.

<i>audiar</i>	<i>audiēmur</i>
<i>audiēris (-re)</i>	<i>audiēmini</i>
<i>audiētur</i>	<i>audientur</i>

Perfect.

<i>audītus sum</i>	<i>audītī sumus</i>
<i>audītus es</i>	<i>audītī estis</i>
<i>audītus est</i>	<i>audītī sunt</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>audītus eram</i>	<i>audītī erāmus</i>
<i>audītus erās</i>	<i>audītī erātis</i>
<i>audītus erat</i>	<i>audītī erant</i>

Future Perfect.

<i>audītus erō</i>	<i>audītī erimus</i>
<i>audītus eris</i>	<i>audītī eritis</i>
<i>audītus erit</i>	<i>audītī erunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>audiar</i>	<i>audiāmur</i>
<i>audiāris (-re)</i>	<i>audiāmini</i>
<i>audiātur</i>	<i>audiantur</i>

Imperfect.

<i>audīrer</i>	<i>audīrēmur</i>
<i>audīrēris (-re)</i>	<i>audīrēmini</i>
<i>audīrētur</i>	<i>audīrentur</i>

Perfect.

<i>audītus sim</i>	<i>audītī sīmus</i>
<i>audītus sis</i>	<i>audītī sītis</i>
<i>audītus sit</i>	<i>audītī sint</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>audītus essem</i>	<i>audītī essēmus</i>
<i>audītus essēs</i>	<i>audītī essētis</i>
<i>audītus esset</i>	<i>audītī essent</i>

. INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīrī

Perf. audītus esse

Fut. auditum irī

IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	<i>Perf.</i> audītus
<i>Pres.</i> audire	audimīni	<i>Fut.</i> audiendus (<i>Gerundive</i>)
<i>Fut.</i> auditor	audiuntor	

34. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

Laudātūrus sum, *I am about to praise.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	laudātūrus sum	<i>Pres.</i> laudātūrus sim
<i>Imp.</i>	laudātūrus eram	<i>Imp.</i> laudātūrus essem
<i>Fut.</i>	laudātūrus erō	
<i>Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fui	<i>Perf.</i> laudātūrus fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	laudātūrus fueram	<i>Plup.</i> laudātūrus fuisset
<i>F. Perf.</i>	laudātūrus fuerō	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. laudātūrus esse
Perf. laudātūrus fuisse

35. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

Laudandus sum, *I am to be praised.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	laudandus sum	<i>Pres.</i> laudandus sim
<i>Imp.</i>	laudandus eram	<i>Imp.</i> laudandus essem
<i>Fut.</i>	laudandus erō	
<i>Perf.</i>	laudandus fui	<i>Perf.</i> laudandus fuerim
<i>Plup.</i>	laudandus fueram	<i>Plup.</i> laudandus fuisset
<i>F. Perf.</i>	laudandus fuerō	

INFINITIVE.

Pres. laudandus esse
Perf. laudandus fuisse

36.

Deponent Verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

CONJ. I. hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, *exhort.*CONJ. II. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear.*CONJ. III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow.*CONJ. IV. potior, potirī, potītus sum, *become master of.*

INDICATIVE.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Pres.</i>	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris	verēris	sequeris	potīris
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
<i>Impf.</i>	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
<i>F. P.</i>	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
<i>Impf.</i>	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāre	verēre	sequere	potīre
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātor	verētor	sequitor	potītor

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potirī
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potitus
<i>Ger.</i>	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND.

hortandī	verendī	sequendī	potiendī
hortandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	potiendō, etc.

SUPINE.

hortātum, -ū	veritum, -ū	secūtum, -ū	potitum, -ū
--------------	-------------	-------------	-------------

Irregular Verbs.

37.

Sum, I am.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : sum, esse, fui.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sum	sumus	sim	sīmus
es	estis	sīs	sītis
est	sunt	sit	sint
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
eram	erāmus	essem	essēmus
erās	erātis	essēs	essētis
erat	erant	esset	essent
<i>Future.</i>			
erō	erimus		
eris	eritis		
erit	erunt		

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

fuī	fuimus
fuistī	fuistis
fuit	fuērunt (-ēre)

Pluperfect.

fueram	fuērāmus
fuērās	fuērātis
fuerat	fuérant

Future Perfect.

fuerō	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> es	este
<i>Fut.</i> estō	estōte
estō	suntō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perfect.

fuerim	fuerimus
fueris	fueritis
fuerit	fuerint

Pluperfect.

fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> esse
<i>Perf.</i> fuisse
<i>Fut.</i> futūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

futūrus

38.

Possum, I am able, I can.PRINCIPAL PARTS : **possum, posse, potuī.**

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest
	possumus, potestis, possunt
<i>Imp.</i>	poteram
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō
<i>Perf.</i>	potuī
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram
<i>F. Perf.</i>	potuerō

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	posse
<i>Perf.</i>	potuisse

SUBJUNCTIVE.

possim, possīs, etc.
possem, possēs, etc.

potuerim
potuissem

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	potēns
--------------	--------

39.

Fīō, I am made, become.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	fīō, fīs, fit fīmus, fitis, fīunt		fīam, fīās, etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	fīēbam		fierem
<i>Fut.</i>	fīam, fīēs, etc.		
<i>Perf.</i>	factus sum		factus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	factus eram		factus essem
<i>F. Perf.</i>	factus erō		
IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	fī, fite	<i>Perf.</i>	factus
		<i>Fut.</i>	faciendus (<i>Gerundive</i>)
INFINITIVE.			
<i>Pres.</i>	fierī		
<i>Perf.</i>	factus esse		
<i>Fut.</i>	factum irī		

40.

Eō, I go.PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō, ire, ivī, itum.**

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	eō, īs, it, īmus, itis, eunt		eam
<i>Imp.</i>	ībam		īrem
<i>Fut.</i>	ībō		
<i>Perf.</i>	ivī (iī)		Iverim (ierim)
<i>Plup.</i>	īveram (ieram)		īvissem (issem)
<i>F. Perf.</i>	īverō (ierō)		
IMPERATIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	ī, ite	<i>Pres.</i>	iēns (<i>Gen. euntis</i>)
<i>Fut.</i>	ītō, itōte ītō, euntō	<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus

	INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
<i>Pres.</i>	īre	eundi, <i>etc.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	īvisse (isse)	SUPINE
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse	itum, -ū

41. Ferō, *I bear, carry.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt	feram, ferās, <i>etc.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbam	ferrem
<i>Fut.</i>	feram, ferēs, <i>etc.</i>	
<i>Perf.</i>	tulī	tulerim
<i>Plup.</i>	tuleram	tulissem
<i>F. Perf.</i>	tulero	
	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	fer ferte	<i>Pres.</i> ferēns
<i>Fut.</i>	fertō fertōte fertō feruntō	<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus
	INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferendī, <i>etc.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	SUPINE.
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse	lātum, -ū

PASSIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris, fertur ferimur, ferimini, feruntur	ferar, ferāris, <i>etc.</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar	ferrer
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar, ferēris, <i>etc.</i>	

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>		<i>lātus sim</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>		<i>lātus essem</i>
<i>F. Perf.</i>	<i>lātus erō</i>		
IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferre, feriminī</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferri</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>fertor</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>lātus esse</i>
	<i>fertor, feruntor</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>lātum iri</i>

PARTICIPLE.

Perf. *lātus**Fut.* *ferendus (Gerundive)*

42. *Volō, I am willing; Nōlō. I am unwilling; Mālō, I prefer*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : { *volō, velle, volui.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.
mālō, mālle, mālui.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>volō</i>	<i>nōlō</i>	<i>mālō</i>
	<i>vīs</i>	<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>māvīs</i>
	<i>volt</i>	<i>nōn volt</i>	<i>māvolt</i>
	<i>volumus</i>	<i>nōlumus</i>	<i>mālumus</i>
	<i>voltis</i>	<i>nōn voltis</i>	<i>māvoltis</i>
	<i>volunt</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>	<i>mālunt</i>
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>volēbam</i>	<i>nōlēbam</i>	<i>mālēbam</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>volam</i>	<i>nōlam</i>	<i>mālam</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>voluī</i>	<i>nōluī</i>	<i>māluī</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>volueram</i>	<i>nōlueram</i>	<i>mālueram</i>
<i>F. Perf.</i>	<i>voluerō</i>	<i>nōluerō</i>	<i>māluerō</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imp.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Plup.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī	nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō	nōlitōte
	nōlitō	noluntō

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
--------------	--------	--------

43.

Defective Verbs.

Coepī , <i>I have begun.</i>	Memini , <i>I remember.</i>	Odī , <i>I hate</i>
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	----------------------------

INDICATIVE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepī	meminī	ōdī
<i>Plup.</i>	coeperam	memineram	ōderam
<i>F. Perf.</i>	coeperō	meminerō	ōderō

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coeperim	meminerim	ōderim
<i>Plup.</i>	coepissem	meminissem	ōdissem

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i>	mementō	<i>Plur.</i>	mementōte
--------------	---------	--------------	-----------

INFINITIVE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coepisse	meminisse	ōdisse
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus esse		ōsūrus esse

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Perf.</i>	coeptus, <i>begun</i>	ōsus
<i>Fut.</i>	coeptūrus	ōsūrus

44.

PREPOSITIONS

I. With the accusative :

ad,	<i>to</i>	extrā,	<i>outside</i>	prope,	<i>near</i>
adversus,	<i>against</i>	in,	<i>into</i>	propter,	<i>on account of</i>
adversum,	<i>toward</i>	infrā,	<i>below</i>	secundum,	<i>next after</i>
ante,	<i>before</i>	inter,	<i>among</i>	sub,	<i>under</i>
apud,	<i>at, near</i>	intrā,	<i>inside</i>	subter,	<i>beneath</i>
circā,	} <i>around</i>	iūxtā,	<i>near</i>	super,	<i>above</i>
circum,		ob,	<i>on account of</i>	suprā,	<i>above</i>
circiter,	<i>about</i>	penes,	<i>in power of</i>	trāns,	<i>across</i>
cis,	} <i>on this side</i>	per,	<i>through</i>	ultrā,	<i>beyond</i>
citrā,		pōne,	<i>behind</i>	versus,	<i>toward</i>
contrā,	<i>opposite</i>	post,	<i>after</i>		
ergā,	<i>toward</i>	praeter,	<i>beyond</i>		

II. With the ablative :

ā, ab, abs,	<i>away from, from, by</i>	prae,	<i>before, in comparison with</i>
absque,	<i>without</i>	prō,	<i>before, for</i>
cōram,	<i>in the presence of</i>	sine,	<i>without</i>
cum,	<i>with</i>	sub,	<i>under</i>
dē,	<i>down from, from</i>	subter,	<i>beneath</i>
ē, ex,	<i>out of, from</i>	super,	<i>above</i>
in,	<i>in</i>	tenus,	<i>as far as</i>

NOTE.—In, sub, subter and super are used with either the accusative or ablative. With the accusative, in and sub denote *motion to a place*; with the ablative, *rest in a place*.

45.

CONJUNCTIONS

I. Coördinate (connecting similar constructions).

et, -que, atque (ac), *and*
etiam, quoque, *also*

aut—aut, *either—or*

neque (nec), *and not* ; neque—neque, *neither—nor*

sive—sive, *whether—or*

vel—vel, *either—or*

autem, *moreover* ; enim, nam, *for* ; sed, *but*

tamen, *nevertheless*

II. Subordinate (connecting subordinate with principal constructions).

1. Temporal, denoting time : antequam, priusquam, *before* ; postquam, *after* ; dum, donec, quod, *while, as long as, until* ; simul, *as soon as* ; cum, ubi, *when*.
2. Causal, denoting cause : cum, *since* ; quod, quia, quoniam, quandō, *because*.
3. Conditional, denoting condition : sī, *if* ; sīn, *but if* ; nisi, *if not, unless*.
4. Concessive, granting something : cum, etsī, quamquam, quamvis, *although*.
5. Comparative, denoting comparison : quam, *than* ; ut, *as*.
6. Final, denoting purpose : ut (utī), quō *that* ; nē, quīn, quōminus, *that not*.
7. Consecutive, denoting result : ut, (so) *that*.

PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX

46. Rules of Agreement.

1. A noun used as an appositive of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in *case*.

2. Adjectives, whether attributive or predicate, agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number* and *case*.
3. Pronouns agree with their antecedents in *gender*, *number* and *person*.
4. A finite verb agrees with its subject in *number* and *person*.

47. Nominative Case.

1. The *subject* of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
2. A *predicate noun* is in the nominative case after the verbs *be*, *become*, *seem*, etc., and the passive verbs *be made*, *be called*, *be chosen*, etc.*

48. **Vocative Case.**—The name of the person or thing *addressed* is in the vocative case.

49. Genitive Case.

1. A noun limiting the meaning of another noun, and not meaning the same thing, is in the genitive case. The word in the genitive may denote *possession*, *description*, *material*, or *the whole* of which a part is taken.
2. Words denoting a part may be followed by a noun in the genitive denoting *the whole*.
3. An objective genitive is used to complete the meaning of adjectives of *desire*, *knowledge*, *memory*, *skill*, etc.
4. An objective genitive may be used with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*.
5. A genitive may be used with verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, etc., to denote the charge.
6. A genitive is used with impersonal verbs of *feeling*.

50. Dative Case.

1. The dative denotes the indirect object—
 - (a) With *transitive* verbs in connection with the accusative of the direct.

* When these verbs are in the infinitive, a predicate noun agrees with the subject of the infinitive in the accusative case.

- (b) With verbs meaning *favor, help, please, trust, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare*. (These verbs in Latin may be intransitive.)
- (c) With verbs compounded with *ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super*.
2. The dative of the *possessor* is used with the verb **sum**.
 3. The dative of the *agent* is used with a verb in the passive periphrastic conjugation.
 4. The dative is used with adjectives of *nearness, fitness, likeness, etc.*, to denote the object toward which the quality is directed.
 5. A noun in the dative may denote the *purpose* or *result* of an action.
 6. A noun in the dative may denote the object to which something is of interest, and is called a dative of *reference*.

51. Accusative Case.

1. The *direct object* of a verb is in the accusative case.
2. A *predicate* accusative may be used after the active of the verbs *make, call, choose, etc.* (together with a direct object) ; and after the infinitive **esse**.
3. A *secondary object* in the accusative (together with a direct object) may be used with verbs meaning *ask, demand, teach, conceal*; and after transitive verbs compounded with **trāns**.
4. A noun in the accusative may be the object of a preposition.
5. The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.
6. A noun denoting the *place to which* is in the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but the names of *towns, small islands, domus* and *rūs* omit the preposition.
7. A noun denoting *duration of time* is in the accusative.
8. A noun denoting *extent of space* is in the accusative.

52. Ablative Case.

1. A noun in the ablative, with or without **ab**, **dē** or **ex**, may denote *separation*.
2. A noun in the ablative with the preposition **ab** may denote the *agent* by whom something is done.
3. Comparatives without **quam** are followed by a noun in the ablative.
4. A noun in the ablative may denote the *means* or *instrument* of an action. This includes the ablative used with **ūt**, **frūr**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vēscor**.
5. A noun in the ablative with **cum** may denote the *manner* of an action. (**Cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective modifying the noun.)
6. A noun in the ablative may denote the *cause* of an action.
7. A noun in the ablative with **cum** may denote *the person with whom* anything is done. (*Ablative of accompaniment*.)
8. A noun in the ablative may denote *degree of difference*.
9. A noun in the ablative modified by an adjective may *describe* another noun. (*Ablative of description*.)
10. A noun in the ablative may denote the *respect* in which anything is or is done. (*Ablative of specification*.)
11. A noun in the ablative, together with a participle, adjective or another noun, may denote the *time, cause* or *condition*, etc., of an action. (*Ablative absolute*.)
12. A noun in the ablative with **in** may denote the *place in which*; but the singular of names of towns, small islands, **domus** and **rūs** is in the locative case.
13. A noun in the ablative, with **ab**, **dē** or **ex**, may denote the *place from which*; but the preposition is omitted with the names of towns, small islands, **domus** and **rūs**.

14. A noun in the ablative may denote *time when* or *within which*.

NOTE.—The rules for the cases of nouns apply also to pronouns, except when the latter are used as adjectives.

53. **The Indicative in Principal Clauses.**—The indicative is used in direct statements of fact and questions of fact.

54. **The Indicative in Subordinate Clauses.**

1. The indicative is used in *relative* clauses that state or determine what person or thing.
2. The indicative is used in *relative* clauses that add a fact not necessary to the main statement.
3. The indicative is used in *causal* clauses beginning with **quod, quia, quoniam** or **quandō**, when the speaker or writer gives his own reason.
4. The indicative is used in *temporal* clauses beginning with **ubi, ut, simul, postquam**; and sometimes **cum, dum, quoad, antequam** or **priusquam**.
5. The indicative is used in *conditional* clauses when the condition is stated as a fact.
6. The indicative is used in *concessive* clauses beginning with **quamquam**, etc.
7. The indicative is used in a *parenthetical* clause or a clause of *comparison* beginning with **ut**.

55. **The Subjunctive in Principal Clauses.**

1. The subjunctive is used to express an *exhortation* in the first person plural of the present tense.
2. The subjunctive is used to express *command* in the third person of either number, present tense.
3. The subjunctive with **nē** is used to express *negative command* in the second person of either number, present or perfect tense.

4. The subjunctive, generally with **utinam**, is used to express a *wish* or *desire*.
5. The subjunctive may be used to express a *possibility*.

56. The Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.

1. The subjunctive with **ut**, **nē**, or a relative may express *purpose*.
2. The subjunctive with **ut**, or **ut nōn**, may express *result*.
3. The subjunctive with **quī** may *describe* an antecedent not otherwise defined ; that is, may state what sort of person or thing the antecedent is.
4. The subjunctive may be used with **cum**, **antequam**, **priusquam**, **dum**, **donec**, **quoad**, to express *time*.
5. The subjunctive may be used with **cum**, **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam** or **quandō** to express *cause*.
6. The subjunctive may be used with **cum**, **quamvis**, etc., to express *concession*.
7. The subjunctive is used with **sī** to express a future *condition* less probable, or condition contrary to fact.
8. The subjunctive is used in *indirect questions*.

57. **The Imperative.**—The imperative is used to express *command* in the second person of the present tense, and the second and third persons of the future.

58. The Infinitive.

1. The infinitive when used as a noun may be a subject, complement, appositive or predicate noun.
2. An infinitive when used as a verb has its subject in the accusative, except that in lively narration the subject may be in the nominative.

59. **Indirect Discourse.**—In indirect discourse the verb of a principal declarative clause is in the *infinitive* ; the verb of a subordinate clause is in the *subjunctive*.

- 60. Sequence of Tenses.**—Principal tenses follow principal tenses ; historical follow historical.
- 61. Adverbs.**—An adverb modifies a verb, adjective or another adverb.
- 62. Prepositions.**—A preposition shows a relation between a noun in the accusative or ablative and some other word.
- 63. Conjunctions.**—A conjunction connects words, phrases or clauses of equal rank ; or principal with subordinate clauses.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

NOTE.—The figure 1 in connection with some verbs indicates that the principal parts are formed like those of *laudō*; 2, that they are formed like the parts of *moneō*; and 4, like those of *audiō*.

A

A., abbreviation for **Aulus**.

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *away from, from, by, on the side of*; as adv., *off*; as a prefix, *away*.

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *put away, hide*.

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [**ab** + **dūcō**], *lead away*.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum [**abs** + **teneō**], *hold from, keep from*.

absum, -esse, āfuī [**ab** + **sum**], *be away, be distant*.

ac, see **atque** (**ac** is used only before consonants).

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [**ad** + **cēdō**, *make way*], *go to, approach, be added*.

acceptus, -a, -um, p.p. of **accipiō**, as adj., *acceptable, pleasing*.

accidō, -cidere, -cidī [**ad** + **cadō**], *fall to, befall, happen*.

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**ad** + **capiō**], *take to, receive, accept*.

accurrō, -currere, -currī (**-cucurrī**), **-cursum** [**ad** + **currō**, *run*], *run to, hasten to*.

accūsō, 1, *accuse, find fault with*.

aciēs, -ēī, F., *edge, line, battle line, army*.

ācritēr, adv., *sharply, fiercely*.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward, against, near*; adv. (with numerals), *about*; as prefix, *to*.

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum (**ad** + **dūcō**), *lead to, bring to, influence*.

adficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fēctum [**ad** + **faciō**], *do to, affect*; with **dolor**, *fill with*; **suppliciō**, *punish*.

adfinitas, -ātis, F., *alliance by marriage*.

adgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [**ad** + **gradior, step, go**], *go toward, attack*.

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [**ad** + **habeō**], *bring in, summon*.

admīror, 1, *wonder at, admire*.

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [**ad** + **mittō**], *send to, let in, let go, allow*.

adolēscētia, -ae, F., *youth*.

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus sum [**ad** + **orior**], *rise against, attack*.

adsciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum, *take to, receive*.

adsum, -esse, -fuī [**ad** + **sum**], *be at hand, be near, be present*.

adventus, -ūs, M. [veniō], *a coming to, arrival, approach.*

adversus, -a, -um, p.p. of advertō, as adj., *opposite, unfavorable.*

advertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum [ad + vertō, turn], *turn to, turn toward.*

aedificium, -i, N., *a building.*

aegerrimē, adv. (sup. of aegrē), *with the greatest difficulty.*

Aemilius, -i, M., *Lucius Aemilius*, one of Caesar's officers.

aequō, i, *make equal.*

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer.*

ager, agri, M., *field, territory.*

āgmen, -inis, N., *an army (on the march).*

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, *put in motion, drive, do, discourse.*

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius], *another's, foreign, unfavorable.*

aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), *some, any.*

aliter, adv. [alius], *otherwise.*

alius, -a, -ud, *another, other (of more than two).*

Allobrogēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Rhone and Isère.*

alō, alere, alui, alitum (altum), *nourish, support.*

Alpēs, -ium, F., *the Alps.*

alter, -era, -erum, *the other (of two); alter—alter, the one—the other; pl. one party—the other.*

altitudō, -inis, F. [altus], *height, depth.*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M., *allies of the Haedui, on the Saone (Arar).*

amicitia, -ae, F. [amicus], *friendship.*

amicus, -a, -um, *friendly; as noun, M., friend.*

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, [ā + mittō], *send away, let go, lose.*

amor, -ōris, M., *love, desire.*

amplius (comp. of ampliō), adv., *farther, longer, more.*

amplus, -a, -um, *large, ample.*

anceps, -cipitis [ambō, both + caput], *two-headed, double, doubtful.*

angustiae, -ārum, F. [angustus], *narrowness, a narrow pass.*

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*

animadvertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum [animum advertō], *perceive, attend to, punish.*

animus, -i, M., *soul, mind, feeling, spirit, courage.*

annus, -i, M., *a year.*

annuus, -a, -um, *annual, for a year.*

ante, adv., or prep. with acc., *before.*

anteā, adv., *before, formerly.*

antiquus, -a, -um [ante], *ancient, former.*

aperiō, -ire, -ui, -tum, *uncover, open, disclose.*

apertus, -a, -um, p.p. as adj., *open, exposed, unprotected.*

appellō, i, *call (by name), address.*

Aprilis, -e, *of April.*

apud, prep. with acc., *among, near, with.*

Aquilēia, -ae, F., *Aquileia (a town at the head of the Adriatic).*

Aquitāni, -ōrum, M., *the Aquitani, Aquitanians, a nation of southern Gaul.*

Aquitānia, -ae, F., *Aquitania.*

Arar, Araris, M., *the Saône (a river of Gaul).*

arbitror, i, *think, judge.*

Ariovistus, -i, M., *a German chief.*

arma, -ōrum, N., *arms* (equipment).
ascendō, *ascendere*, *ascendī*, *ascēsum*, *climb*, *ascend*.

ascēsus, -ūs, M., *a climbing up*, *ascent*.

atque (*ac*), conj., *and also*, *as*.

attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum [*ad* + *tangō*, *touch*], *touch upon*, *border upon*, *reach*.

auctōritās, -ātis, F., *influence*, *authority*, *advice*.

audācia, -ae, F. [*audāx*], *boldness*.

audācter, adv., *boldly*.

audāx, adj., *bold*.

audeō, *audēre*, *ausus sum*, (*be bold*), *dare*.

audiō, 4, *hear*.

augeō, *augēre*, *auxī*, *auctum*, *increase*.

Aulus (abbr. **A.**), *Aulus*, a Roman name.

aut, conj., *aut—aut*, *either—or*.

autem, conj., *on the other hand*, *but*, *furthermore*, *besides*.

auxilium, -ī, N., *help*, *aid*; pl. *auxiliaries*.

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum [*āv* + *vertō*, *turn*], *turn off*, *turn away*, *retreat*.

avus, -ī, M., *grandfather*.

Axona, -ae, F., a river of Gaul, the *Aisne*.

B

Belgae, -ārum, M., the *Belgae*, *Belgians*, a nation of northern Gaul.

bellō, 1, *make war*, *fight*.

bellicōsus, -a, -um [*bellum*], *warlike*.

bellum, -ī, N., *war*.

bene, adv. [*bonus*], *well*.

beneficium, -ī, N., *well-doing*, *kindness*, *benefit*.

Bibracte, -is, N., *Bibracte*, a town of the Haedui.

bīdūum, -ī, N. [*diēs*], *two days*.

biennium, -ī, N. [*bi* + *annus*], *two years*.

bipartītō, adv. [*pars*], *in two divisions*.

Biturīgēs, -um, M., the *Bituriges*, a tribe of central Gaul.

Bōīī, -ōrum, M., the *Boii*, a tribe of central Gaul.

bonitās, -ātis, F. [*bonus*], *goodness*, *fertility*.

bonus, -a, -um, *good*.

bracchium, -ī, N., the *forearm*.

brevis, -e, *short*.

Britannia, -ae, F., *Britain*.

C

C. for **G.**, abbr. of *Gaius*.

cadō, *cadere*, *cecidī*, *cāsum*, *fall*.

Caesar, *Caesaris*, M., *Gāius Iūlius Caesar*, a Roman general, statesman and writer; born 100 (?) B.C., assassinated 44 B.C.; governor of Gaul 58–49 B.C.

calamitās, -ātis, F., *disaster*, *defeat*.

capīō, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *take*, *seize*.

caput, *capitis*, N., *head*.

carrus, -ī, M., *cart*.

Cassianus, -a, -um, *Cassian*, of *Cassius*.

Cassius, -ī, M., *Lucius Cassius*, a Roman general.

castellum, -ī, N., a *fortress*, *redoubt*.

Casticus, -ī, M., *Casticus*, a chief of the Sequani.

castra, -ōrum, N. [*castrum*, *fort*], a *fortified camp*, *camp*.

cāsus, -ūs [cadō], (*a falling*), *accident, calamity, chance*.

Catamantāloedēs, -is, M., *a chief of the Sequani*.

Caturigēs, -um, M., *the Caturiges, an Alpine tribe*.

causa, -ae, F., *cause*, abl. *for the sake*.

caveō, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautum**, *take care, be on one's guard*.

celeriter (**celerius**, **celerrimō**), adv., *quickly*.

Celtae, -ārum, M., *the Celts, inhabitants of central Gaul*.

cēnsus, -ūs, M., *enumeration*.

centum, indecl. adj., *a hundred*.

certus, -a, -um, *sure, certain; certiorē facere, to inform*.

Ceutronēs, -um, M., *the Ceutrones, an Alpine tribe*.

cibārius, -a, -um, *pertaining to food; as noun, cibāria, -ōrum, N., food, provisions*.

circiter, adv., *about*.

circuitus, -us, M. [circum + eō], *a going round, circuit*.

circum, prep. with acc., *around, about; as prefix, around*.

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [circum + dūcō], *lead around*.

circumveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum [circum + veniō], *surround*.

citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (citrā), *nearer, hither*.

citrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *this side, within*.

cīvitās, -ātis, F., *citizenship, state, tribe, citizens*.

claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, *shut, close*.

cliēns, -entis, M. F., *client, vassal*.

coēmō, -emero, -ēmī, -ēemptum [con + emō, *buy*], *buy up, purchase*.

coepī, **coepisse**, defect. verb., *begin*.

coērcēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *control*.

cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum** [con + agō], *drive together, collect, compel*.

cōgnōscō, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, *learn; in perf., have learned, hence, know*.

cohors, **cohortis**, F., *a cohort (tenth part of a legion)*.

cohortor, ī, [con + hortor], *exhort, encourage*.

collis, -is, M., *hill*.

colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultum**, *till, cultivate*.

combūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstum [con + ūrō], *burn up, consume*.

commemorō, ī [con + memorō], *call to mind, recount, mention, relate*.

commeō, ī, *go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit*.

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum [con + mittō], *send together, commit, join, permit*.

commodē, adv., *conveniently*.

commonefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, *remind*.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [con + moveō], *move deeply, disturb, alarm*.

commūniō, 4 [con + mūniō], *fortify strongly*.

commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., *change*.

commūtō, ī [con + mūtō, *change*], *change entirely*.

comparō, ī [con + parō], *get ready, prepare, procure*.

comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *ascertain*.

complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *embrace*.

compleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill up, fill.*

complūrēs, -a (-ia), *many, very many.*

comportō, I [con + portō], *bring together.*

con- (com-, comb-), *prefix, together.*

cōnātum, -ī, N., or cōnātus, -ūs, M., *trial, attempt.*

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [con + cēdō, *make way*], *yield, concede, grant, allow.*

concido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum [con + caedō, *cut*], *cut down, kill.*

conciliō, I, *bring together, win over, conciliate, secure, gain.*

concilium, -ī, N., *meeting, assembly, council, conference.*

concursum, -ūs, M., *running together, onset.*

condiciō, -ōnis, F., (*a speaking together*), *terms, terms of agreement.*

condōnō, I [con + dōnō, *give*], *par-don (for the sake of).*

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [con + dūcō], *bring together, hire.*

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātum [con + ferō], *bring together, collect, compare; sē cōnferre, to retreat.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *crowded, in close order.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectam [con + faciō], *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.*

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsus vān [con + fidō, *trust*], *trust, rely on.*

cōnfirmō, I [con + firmā, *strengthen*], *make firm, establish, assure, declare.*

coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [con + iaciō], *throw together, hurl.*

coniūratiō, -ōnis, F. [coniūrō], *con-spiracy.*

coniūrō, I [con + iūrō, *swear together*], *conspire.*

conligō, I [con + ligō, *bind*], *bind together.*

conlocō [con + locō, *place*], *place together, station; with nūptum, give in marriage.*

conloquor, -loquī, -locutus sum [con + loquor], *talk together, confer.*

cōnor, I, *try, attempt.*

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum [con + quaerō], *search for.*

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um [sanguis, *blood*], *related by blood; as noun, M., kinsman.*

cōnsciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scītum [con + sciscō], *decree, resolve; with mortem, commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um, *knowing, conscious.*

cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum [con + scribō], *write together, enroll, levy.*

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum [con + sequor], *follow up, pursue, obtain.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., *Considius, a Roman soldier.*

cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum [con + sidō, *sit down*], *encamp, settle.*

cōnsilium, -ī, N., *counsel, plan.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum [con + sistō, *stand*], *take a stand, stop, remain.*

cōnsolōr, I, *console, cheer.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., (*a looking at*), *sight.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spēcī, -spectum [con + speciō, *look*], *catch sight of, see.*

cōnspicor, I, *perceive.*

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum [con + statuō, *set together*], *put, station, decide, appoint*.
 cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *become accustomed*; (in. perf.) *be accustomed, be wont*.
 cōnsul, -ulis, M., *consul*.
 cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum [con + sūmō], *destroy, consume*.
 contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum [con + tendō, *stretch tight*], *strive, fight, hasten*.
 continēns, -entis, part. as noun, *continent*.
 continenter, adv., *continually*.
 contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum [con + teneō], *hold together, restrain, bound, hem in*.
 contrā, prep. with acc., and adv., *opposite, against*.
 contumēlia, -ae, F., *disgrace, insult*.
 conveniō, -venīrē, -venī, -ventum [con + veniō], *come together, meet, assemble*: *convenit* (impers.), *it is fitting, it is agreed*.
 conventus, -ūs, M., (*a coming together*), *assembly, meeting*.
 convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum [con + vertō], *turn*: *signa convertere*, *wheel about*.
 convocō, I [con + vocō], *call together, summon*.
 cōpia, -ae, F., *plenty, supply, number*; pl. *forces, troops*.
 cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *well-supplied, wealthy*.
 cornū, -ūs, N., *horn, wing* (of an army).
 cotidiānus, -a, -um, *daily*.
 cotidiē, adv., *daily*.
 Crassus, -ī, M., *Publius Crassus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

creō, I, *create, elect*.
 cremō, I, *burn, consume*.
 crēscō, crēscere, crēvi, crētum, *grow, increase*.
 cultus, -ūs, M. [colō], *civilization, culture, refinement*.
 cum, prep. with abl., *with*.
 cum, conj., *when, since, although*.
 cupidō, adv., *eagerly*.
 cupiditās, -ātis, F., *eager desire, longing*.
 cupidus, -a, -um, *desirous*.
 cupiō, -ere, -ivi (-iī), -itum, *desire, wish well to*.
 cūrō, I, *care for*; (with gerundive), *have (something done)*.
 custōs, -ōdis, M. F., *guard, spy*.

~~castō cadere cidi casum.~~

D

damnō, I, *condemn*.
 dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from, concerning, of, about*; as prefix, *down, utterly*.
 dēbeō, 2, *owe, ought*.
 decem, indecl. adj., *ten*.
 decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*.
 dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [dē + capiō], *deceive, entrap*.
 decuriō, -ōnis, M., *a decurion, a commander of cavalry*.
 dēditicius, -a, -um, *surrendered*; as noun, *prisoner*.
 dēditio, -ōnis, F., (*a giving up*), *surrender*.
 dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensum, *keep off, defend*.
 dēfessus, -a, -um [dēfetiscor], p.p. as adj., *wearied, exhausted*.
 dēficiō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum [dē + iaciō], *throw down, dislodge, disappoint*.

deinde, adv., *then, next.*

dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum, blot out.

dēliberō, ī, *deliberate, ponder.*

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum [dē + legō], *choose, select.*

dēminuō, -minuere, -minuī, -minūtum [minu], *lessen, diminish.*

dēmōnstrō, ī, *point out, explain.*

dēmum, adv., *at length.*

dēnique, adv., *at length, lastly.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, *dense.*

depōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *lay aside; with memoria, blot out.*

dēpopulor, ī [dē + populor], *ravage, lay waste.*

dēprecātor, -ōris, M., *mediator.*

dēsīgnō, ī, *indicate, designate.*

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitutum [dē + sistō, stand], *stand away from, desist from, cease.*

dēspērō, ī [dē + spērō], *be hopeless, despair.*

dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum [dē + speciō], *look down on, despise.*

dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitutum [dē + statuō], *forsake, abandon.*

dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum [dē + stringō, draw off], *unsheathe, draw.*

deterreō, 2 [dē + terreō], *frighten off, deter, prevent.*

deus, -ī, M., *a god.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right: dextra (manus), the right hand.*

dīcō, dicere, dixī, dictum, *say, tell, speak.*

dictiō, -ōnis, F., *(a speaking), pleading.*

diēs, -ēī, M. or F., *day, time.*

differō, differre, distulī, dilātum [dis + ferō, bear apart], *differ.*

difficilis, -e [dis + facilis], *not easy, difficult.*

difficultās, -ātis, F., *difficulty.*

dīmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum [dī + mittō, send apart], *dismiss.*

dis-, dī-, prefix, *apart, not.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum [dis + cēdō, go apart], *depart, withdraw.*

discō, discere, didici, *learn.*

disiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [dis + faciō], *throw apart, break, scatter.*

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [dis + pōnō, place apart], *arrange, station.*

ditissimus, -a, -um (sup. of dives), *richest.*

diū, adv., *for a long time.*

diūturnus, -a -um [diū], *of long duration, long.*

dīves, -itis, adj., *rich.*

Diviciācus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Haedui.*

Diviciō, -ōnis, M., *a chief of the Helvetii.*

dividō, -videre, -vīsi, -vīsum, *divide, separate.*

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *teach.*

doleō, 2, *suffer pain, grieve.*

dolor, -ōris, M., *pain, grief.*

dolus, -ī, M., *treachery, deceit.*

domus, -ūs, F., *house, home; domī, at home.*

dubitō, ī, *doubt, hesitate.*

dubitātiō, -ōnis, *hesitation.*

dubius, -a, -um, *doubtful.*

ducentī, -ae, -a [duo + centum], *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, *lead, draw, consider, prolong.*

ūm, conj., *while, until.*

Dumnorix, -igis, M., a chief of the
Haedui.

duo, duae, duo, *two*.

duodecim [duo + decem], indecl.
adj., *twelve*.

duodēviginti, indecl. adj., (*two from
twenty*), *eighteen*.

dux, ducis, M. [dūcō], *leader, guide*.

E

ē, ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*;
as prefix, *out, forth*.

ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum [ē +
dūcō], *lead out*.

effeminō, ī, *weaken, enervate*.

fferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum [ex +
ferō], *bear out, lift up, elate*.

ego, I.

ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum [ē +
gradior, *step*], *go out, march out*.

ēgregius, -a, -um, *uncommon, re-
markable*.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy*.

ēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum
[ē + mittō], *send forth, dis-
charge, let go, throw aside*.

enim, conj., *for*.

ēnūntiō, ī [ē + nūntiō], *tell out,
report*.

eō, ire, ivi (if), itum, *go*.

eō, adv., *to that place, thither*.

eōdem, adv., *to the same place*.

eques, equitis, M., *horseman, knight*;
pl. *cavalry*.

equester, -tris, -tre [eques], *belong-
ing to a horseman, cavalry*.

equitātus, -ūs, M., *cavalry*.

equus, -ī, M., *horse*.

ēripīō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum [ē +
rapiō, *seize*], *snatch away, rescue*;
sē ēripere, *to escape*.

et, conj., *and*.

etiam, conj., *and also, even*.

etsi, conj., *even if, although*.

ēvellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum [ē +
vellō, *pluck*], *pull out*.

ex, *see ē*.

exemplum, -ī, N., *example*.

exercitus, -ūs, M. [exerceō, *exercise*],
a trained body, an army.

exeō, -ire, -ivi (-ii), -itum [ex + eō],
go out.

existimō, reckō, think.

existimātiō, -ōnis, F., *estimate,
opinion*.

expediō, 4 [pēs], *disentangle*; perf.
part., *unencumbered*, (of troops)
without baggage.

explōrator, -ōris, M., *scout, spy*.

expūgnō, ī [ex + pūgnō], *take by
storm, capture*.

exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum [ex +
sequor], *follow out, follow up,
enforce*.

expectō, ī, *look out for, await, ex-
pect*.

extrā, adv. and prep. with acc., *out-
side of, beyond*.

extrēmus, -a, -um, *outermost, far-
thest, extreme*.

exūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ūstum [ex +
ūrō, *burn*], *burn up*.

F

facile, adv., *easily*.

facilis, -e, *easy*.

faciō, facere, feci, factum, *make, do*.

factiō, -ōnis, F., *faction, party*.

facultās, -ātis, F. [faciō], *opportunity
(of doing), means*; pl. *resources*.

famēs, -is, F., *hunger*.

familia, -ae, F., *household, retinue*.

familiāris, -e [familia], *belonging to the household, private*; as noun, *friend*: **rēs familiāris**, *private property*.

faveo, **favēre**, **fāvi**, **fautum**, *favor*.

ferāx, -ācis, adj., *fertile*.

ferē, adv., *almost*.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, *bear, carry, bring*.

ferrum, -i, N., *iron*.

fidēs, -ei, F., *faith, confidence, protection, pledge*.

filia, -ae, F., *daughter*.

filius, -i, M., *son*.

fīnis, -is, M., *end, limit, boundary*; pl. *territory*.

fīnitimus, -a, -um [fīnis], *bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring*: **fīnitimī**, as noun, *neighbors*.

fiō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, *be made, be done, happen*.

fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong, firm*.

flāgitō, i, *demand earnestly*.

flēō, **flēre**, **flēvi**, **flētum**, *weep*.

flūmen, -inis, N. [flūō], *river*.

fluō, **fluere**, **fluxī**, **fluxum**, *flow*.

fortis, -e, *strong, brave*.

fortiter, adv., *bravely*.

fortitūdō, -inis, F. [fortis], *bravery*.

fortūna, -ae, F., *chance, fortune, lot*; pl. *property*.

fossa, -ae, F. [fodiō, dig], *ditch, trench*.

frāter, **frātris**, M., *brother*.

frāternus, -a, -um, *brotherly, fraternal*.

frīgus, -oris, N., *cold, coldness*.

frūctus, -ūs, M., *fruit, crops*.

frūgēs, -um, F., *crops*.

frūmentārius, -a, -um [frūmentum], *abounding in grain, fruitful*.

frūmentor, i, *gather grain*.

frūmentum, -i, N., *grain*; pl. *crops*.

fuga, -ae, F., *flight*.

fugitivus, -i, M., *deserter, fugitive*.

G

Gabinus, -i, M., *Aulus Gabinius*, a Roman consul, 58 B.C.

Gāius, -i, M., a Roman name.

Galba, -ae, M., *Servius Galba*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul*.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic*.

Gallus, -i, M., a Gaul.

Garumna, -ae, M. or F., *the Garonne*, a river of Gaul.

Genāva, -ae, F., *Geneva*.

genus, **generis**, N., *race, tribe, class*.

Germānia, -ae, F., *Germany*.

Germānī, -ōrum, M., *the Germans*.

gerō, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestum**, *carry on, wage, do*.

gladius, -i, M., *sword*.

glōria, -ae, F., *glory*.

glōrior, i, *boast, glory*.

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M., *the Graioceli*, an Alpine tribe.

grātia, -ae, F., *favor, good-will*.

grātulor, i, *congratulate*.

gravis, -e, *heavy*.

graviter, adv., *heavily, severely*:

graviter ferre, *be annoyed, be vexed*.

H

habēō, 2, *have, hold*.

Haeduī, -ōrum, M., *the Haedui*, a Gallic tribe.

Haeduus, -a, -um, *of the Haedui, Haedian*.

Helvētia, -ae, F., *Helvetia* (now Switzerland).

Quoniam. Arum. i

Helvētīi, -ōrum, M., *the Helvetii, Helvetians.*

Helvētius (**Helvēticus**), -a, -um, *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.*

hiberna, -ōrum, N., *winter-quarters (supply castra).*

hic, **haec**, **hōc**, *this.*

hiemō, I, *pass the winter.*

• **hiems**, **hiemis**, F., *winter.*

Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain.*

homō, -inis, M. F., *a human being, man.*

honor, -ōris, M., *honor, respect.*

hōra, -ae, F., *hour.*

hortor, I, *urge, encourage.*

hostis, -is, M. F., *stranger, (public) enemy; pl. the enemy.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, F., *refinement, civilization.*

I

iaciō, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactum**, *throw.*

iactō, I, *toss, discuss.*

iam, adv., *by this time, now, already.*

ibi, adv., *in that place, there.*

Iccius, -ī, M., *a prominent Belgian.*

ictus, -ūs, M., *stroke, blow.*

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, *the same.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable.*

Idūs, -uum, F., *the Ides.*

ignis, -is, M., *fire.*

ignōrō, I, *not know, be ignorant.*

ille, **illa**, **illud**, *that (yonder).*

• **illīc** [**ille**], adv., *there.*

immortālis, -e, *immortal.*

impedimentum, -ī, N., *hindrance, impediment; pl. baggage, baggage-train.*

impediō, 4 [**pēs**], *entangle, hinder.*

impendeō, -ēre, *overhang, impend.*

imperium, -ī, N., *command, supreme power.*

imperātor, -ōris, M., *commander-in-chief.*

imperō, I, *command, make requisition for, levy.*

impetrō, I, *obtain (by request), accomplish.*

impetus, -ūs, M., *attack.*

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum [**in** + **pōnō**], *place upon, impose.*

importō, I [**in** + **portō**], *bring in, import.*

improbus, -a, -um, *base, wicked.*

imprōvisō, adv. [**in** + **prō** + **visus**], *unexpectedly, unawares.*

impūne, adv. [**in** + **poena**], *without punishment, with impunity.*

impūnitās, -ātis, F., *freedom from punishment, impunity.*

in, prep. with acc. (of motion), *into, to, against*; with abl. (of rest), *in, on, over*; as prefix, *in, into, on*; negative prefix, *not.*

incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *set fire to.*

incitō, I, *urge on, incite.*

incolō, -colere, -coluī, — [**in** + **colō**], *dwell in, inhabit.*

incommodum, -ī, N., *disadvantage, disaster.*

incrēdibilis, -e [**in** + **crēdō**, *believe*], *incredible.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence.*

indiciū, -ī, N., *information, evidence.*

indūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum [**in** + **dūcō**], *lead into, lead on, induce.*

indulgeo, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultum, *favor.*

inferior, -ius [**Inferus**], *lower.*

inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum, *bring into, bring upon, wage upon, attack.*
inflectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *bend, curve.*
influō, -fluere, -fluxī, -fluxum, *flow into, flow.*
inimicus, -a, -um [*in + amicus*], *unfriendly.*
initium, -ī, N., *beginning.*
iniūria, -ae, F. [*iūs, right*], *wrong, injustice.*
iniussū, adv., *without command.*
inopia, -ae, F., *lack, scarcity.*
inopināns, -antis, *not expecting, unaware.*
insciēns, -entis [*in + sciō*], *not knowing, unaware.*
insequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum [*in + sequor*] *follow up, pursue.*
insidiae, -ārum, F., *treachery, ambuscade, stratagem.*
insignis, -e, *marked, remarkable* : **insigne, N.**, as noun, *sign, decoration.*
insolenter, adv., *insultingly.*
institūō, -stituere, -stitulī, -stitūtum [*in + statuō*], *set up, establish, begin, train.*
institūtum, -ī, N., *custom, institution.*
instō, -stāre, -stitī, -statum [*in + stō, stand*], *stand near, be near, press forward.*
instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *build, draw up, marshal.*
intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum [*inter + legō, gather*], *learn, know, understand.*
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*; as prefix, *between.*
intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum

[*inter + cēdō*], *go between, intervene, (of time) elapse.*
interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum [*inter + claudō, close*], *cut off, shut off.*
interdiū, adv. [*inter + diū*], *during the day, by day.*
interdum, adv. [*inter + dum*], *sometimes.*
interēā, adv. [*inter + ea*], *meanwhile.*
interest, see intersum.
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [*inter + faciō*], *kill.*
interim, adv., *meanwhile.*
interior, inner, interior.
intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum [*inter + mittō*], *stop, interrupt, intervene, (of time) let pass.*
interneciō, -ōnis, F., *extermination.*
interpres, -etis, M. F., *interpreter.*
intersum, -esse, -fui [*inter + sum*], *be between, intervene*; **impers. it** *concerns, it interests.*
intervallum, -ī, N., *interval.*
invitus, -a, -um, *unwilling.*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *himself, herself, itself.*
is, ea, id, this, that, he, she, it.
iste, ista, istud, that (of yours).
ita, adv., *so, thus.*
Italia, -ae, F., *Italy.*
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore.*
item, adv., *in like manner, likewise.*
iter, itineris, N. [*eo*], (a going), *way, journey, march.*
iubeō, iubere, iussī, iussum, *order.*
iūdicium, -ī, N., *judgment, trial.*
iūdicō, ī, judge.
iugum, -ī, N., *yoke, ridge.*
Iūlius, -ī, Julius.
iumentum, -ī, N., *beast of burden.*

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join*.
 Iūra, -ae, M., Mount Jura, a mountain range running from the Rhine to the Rhone.
 iūs, iūris, N., *right, justice, law*.
 iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, N., *oath*.
 iūstitia, -ae, F., *justice*.
 iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help, aid*.

K

Kalendae (Calendae), -ārum, F., *the Calends* (the first day of a month).

L

L., *see* Lūcius.
 Labiēnus, -ī, M., *Titus Labienus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
 iacessō, -ere, -ivi, -itum, *provoke, assault, harass*.
 lacrima, -ae, F., *tear*.
 lacus, -ūs, M., *lake*.
 largior, 4, *give lavishly, bribe*.
 largiter, adv., *lavishly*.
 largitiō, -ōnis, F., *giving lavishly, bribery*.
 lātō, adv., *broadly, widely*.
 lātitudō, -inis, F. [lātus], *width*.
 Latobrigī, -ōrum, M., *the Latobrigi*, a Gallic tribe.
 lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide*.
 latus, -eris, N., *side, flank*.
 laudō, 1, *praise*.
 lēgātiō, -ōnis, F., *embassy*.
 lēgātus, -ī, M., *ambassador, lieutenant*.
 legiō, -ōnis, F., *legion*.
 Lemannus, -ī, M., *Lake Geneva*.
 lēnitās, -ātis, F., *smoothness, gentleness*.
 lēx, lēgis, F., *law*.
 liber, -era, -erum, *free*.
 liberālitās, -ātis, F., *liberality*.

liberō, adv., *freely*.
 liberī, -ōrum, M. [liber], *children* (free members of a household).
 libertās, -ātis, F. [liber], *freedom, liberty*.
 liceor, 2, *bid* (at auction).
 licet, licēre, licuit, impers., *it is permitted*.
 Lingonēs, -um, M., *the Lingones*, a Gallic tribe.
 lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, language*.
 linter, lintris, F., *canoe*.
 Liscus, -ī, M., a chief of the Haedui.
 littera, -ae, F., *a letter of the alphabet*; pl. *a letter* (epistle).
 locus, -ī, M., pl. loca, ōrum, N., *place*.
 longō, adv., *far, by far*.
 longitūdō, -inis, F. [longus], *length*.
 longus, -a, -um, *long*.
 loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, *speak*.
 Lūcius, -ī (abbr. L.), M., a Roman name.
 lūna, -ae, F., *moon*.
 lūx, lūcis, F., *light*.

M

M., *see* Mārcus.
 magis, comp. adv. (sup. māximē), *more, rather*.
 magistrātus, -ūs, M., *magistracy, magistrate*.
 māgnopere, adv., *greatly, especially*.
 māgnus, -a, -um (comp. māior, sup. māximus), *great, large*.
 māiōrēs, -um, M. (māior), *ancestors*.
 male, adv., *badly*.
 maleficiū, -ī, N., *mischievousness, harm*.
 malus, -a, -um, *bad*.
 mandō, 1, *intrust, order*; with sē fugae, *take to*.

manus, -ūs, F., *hand, armed force, band.*

Mārcus, -ī, M., a Roman name.

mare, **maris**, N., *sea.*

matara, -ae, F., *a Gallic javelin.*

māter, **mātris**, F., *mother, matron.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, N., *marriage.*

Mātrona, -ae, M., *the Marne.*

mātūrō, I, *hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, *ripe, early.*

māximē, sup. adv. [**māgnus**], *most, very greatly, especially.*

māximus, see **māgnus**.

medius, -a, -um, *in the middle of.*

memoria, -ae, F., *recollection, memory.*

mēnsis, -is, M., *month.*

mercātor, ōris, M., *merchant, trader.*

mereor, 2, *deserve, merit.*

meritum, -ī, N., *desert, merit.*

Messāla, -ae, M., *Marcus Messala, a Roman consul 61 B.C.*

mētiōr, **mētirī**, **mēnsus sum**, *measure.*

miles, -itis, M., *soldier.*

militāris, -e [**miles**], *pertaining to a soldier, military.*

mille, adj., *a thousand*; pl. as noun, **mīlia**, -ium, N.; **mīlia passuum**, *miles.*

minimē, adv., *least, by no means.*

minimus, -a, -um (sup. of **parvus**), *least, very little.*

minor (comp. of **parvus**), *smaller, less.*

minuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum [**minus**], *make smaller, lessen.*

minus, adv. [**minor**], *less.*

miser, -era, -erum, *wretched, poor.*

miseret, 2, impers., *excites pity in.*

mittō, **mittere**, **misi**, **missum**, *send.*

modo, adv., *only.*

molō, -ere, -ui, -itum, *grind.*

moneō, 2, *advise, warn, remind.*

mōns, **montis**, M., *mountain.*

morior, **mori**, **mortuus sum**, *die.*

moror, I, *delay, tarry.*

mors, **mortis**, F. [**morior**], *death.*

mōs, **mōris**, M., *manner, custom*; pl. *customs, character.*

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *move.*

mulier, **mulieris**, F., *woman.*

multitūdō, -inis, F. [**multus**], *great number, multitude.*

multus, -a, -um, *much*; pl. *many.*

mūniō, 4, *fortify.*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, F., *fortification.*

mūrus, -ī, M., *wall.*

N

nam, conj., *for.*

Nammēius, -ī, M., *an Helvetian chief.*

nātiō, -ōnis, F., *nation.*

nātūra, -ae, F., *nature, character*

nauta, -ae, M., *sailor.*

nāvigō, I, *sail.*

nāvis, -is, F., *ship.*

nē, conj., *that—not, not to, lest*; (after words of fearing) *that.*

-ne, enclitic interrog. particle.

nec, see **neque**.

necessāriō, adv., *necessarily.*

necessārius, -a, -um, *necessary*; as noun, M., *kinsman, friend.*

negō, I, *say not, deny.*

nēmō, -inis, M. F., *no one.*

neque (**nec**), conj., *and not, also not*: **neque—neque**, *neither—nor.*

nervus, -ī, M., *sinew*; pl. *power, strength.*

neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither.*

nēve (neu), adv., *and not, nor.*
 nex, necis, F., *death.*
 nihil, indecl. noun, *nothing.*
 nisi, conj., *if not, unless.*
 nitor, nīti, nīsus or nīxus sum, *rely upon, strive.*
 nōbilis, -e, *famous, high-born, noble.*
 nōbilitās, -ātis, F., *nobility, nobles.*
 noctū, adv. [nox], *by night.*
 nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *not wish, be unwilling.*
 nōmen, -inis, N., *name.*
 nōminātim, adv., *by name.*
 nōn, adv., *not.*
 nōnāgintā, indecl. adj., *ninety.*
 nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
 nōnnūllus, -a, -um, (not none), *some;*
 pl. as noun, *some.*
 nōnnumquam, (not never), *sometimes.*
 Nōrēia, -ae, F., *Noreia*, a town of the Norici.
 Nōricus, -a, -um, *of the Norici, Norican.*
 nōs [ego], *we.*
 nōscō, nōscere, nōvi, nōtum, *know.*
 noster, -tra, -trum [nōs], *our, ours.*
 novem, indecl. adj., *nine.*
 novus, -a, -um, *new*: novae rēs, *new state of affairs, revolution.*
 nox, noctis, F., *night.*
 nūbō, nūbere, nūpsi, nūptum, *veil one's self (for marriage), marry.*
 nūdus, -a, -um, *naked, exposed, unprotected.*
 nūllus, -a, -um, *not any, no, none.*
 num, interrog. particle implying a negative answer.
 numerus, -i, M., *number.*
 numquam, adv., *never.*
 nūntiō, i, *report, announce.*

nūntius, -i, M., *messenger, message, news.*
 nūper, adv., *recently.*

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of*;
 as prefix, *toward, against.*
 obaerātus, -i, M. [aes, money], *debtor.*
 obiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [ob + iaciō], *throw in front, set up, oppose, expose.*
 obliviscor, oblivisci, oblitus sum, *forget.*
 obsecrō, i, *beseech, implore.*
 obses, -idis, M. F., *hostage.*
 obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, *bind.*
 obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum [ob + teneō], *hold, possess.*
 occāsus, -ūs, M. [cadō, fall], *falling, setting.*
 occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum [ob + caedō, cut], *kill, slay.*
 occultō, i, *hide, conceal.*
 occupō, i, *seize, take possession of, occupy.*
 occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum [ob + currō, run], *run to meet, meet.*
 Oceanus, -i, M., *ocean.*
 Ocelum, -i, N., a town of the Graio-celi, in the Alps.
 octō, indecl. adj., *eight.*
 octōdecim, indecl. adj., *eighteen.*
 octōgintā, indecl. adj., *eighty.*
 oculus, -i, M., *eye.*
 ōdī, ōdisse, def. verb, *hate.*
 offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fensum, (*strike against*), *offend, hurt.*
 offēnsiō, -ōnis, F., *offence.*
 omnīnō, adv. [omnis], *altogether, in all.*

omnis, -e, *all, every*.
 oportet, -ēre, -uit, *impers. verb, it is necessary, one ought*.
 oppidum, -i, N., *town*.
 oppugnō, I, *fight against, storm*.
 ops, opis (not used in nom. sing.), *power, strength; pl. resources, means*.
 opus, -eris, N., *work*.
 orātiō, -ōnis, F. [ōrō], *speech, address, argument*.
 Orgetorix, -Igis, M., *a chief of the Helvetii*.
 oriēns, -entis, part. as adj. [orior], *rising*.
 orior, oriri, ortus sum, *rise*.
 orō, I, *speak, plead, entreat*.
 ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum [ob + tendō, *stretch*], *show, point out, declare*.

P

P., *see Pūlius*.
 pābulātiō, -ōnis, F., *foraging*.
 pābulum, -i, N., *food, fodder*.
 pācō, I [pāx], *pacify, subdue*.
 paene, adv., *almost*.
 pāgus, -i, M., *canton, district*.
 pār, paris, *equal*.
 parātus, -a, -um [parō], *prepared, ready*.
 pāreō, 2, *obey*.
 pārō, I, *prepare, provide*.
 pars, partis, F., *part, direction*.
 parvus, -a, -um (comp. minor, sup. minimus), *small, little*.
 passus, -ūs, M., *step, pace* (five Roman feet): *mīlia passuum, miles*.
 patēns, -entis, part. as adj., *open, exposed*.

pateō, -ēre, -ui, *lie open, extend*.
 pater, patris, M., *father*.
 patior, pati, passus sum, *suffer, permit*.
 pauci, -ae, -a, *few*.
 pāx, pācis, F., *peace*.
 pedes, -itis, M., *foot-soldier*.
 pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsum, *drive, beat, rout*.
 per, prep. with acc., *through, by means of; as prefix, through, thoroughly, very*.
 perdūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum [per + dūcō], *lead through, extend*.
 perfacilis, -is, *very easy*.
 perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum [per + ferō], *bear through, endure, suffer*.
 perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [per + faciō], *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete, bring about*.
 perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum [per + frangō, *break*], *break through*.
 perfuga, -ae, M., *deserter, fugitive*.
 perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, *flee, desert*.
 periculum, -i, N., *danger, risk, peril*.
 peritus, -a, -um, *experienced, skilled, skilful*.
 permittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum [per + mittō, *let through*], *permit, grant, allow*.
 permovēō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum [per + movēō], *move thoroughly, rouse, influence*.
 perniciēs, -ēi, F., *destruction*.
 perpauci, -ae, -a, *very few*.
 perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum [per + rumpō, *break*], *break through, break up*.
 persequor, -sequi, secūtus sum [per + sequor], *follow after, pursue*.
 perseverō, I, *persist, continue*.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum
[per + solvō], *pay (in full).*

persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsūm,
persuade.

perterreō, 2 [per + terreō], *frighten thoroughly, terrify.*

pertineō, -ēre, -ui [per + teneō], *reach through, extend, pertain.*

pervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
[per + veniō], *come through, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, M., *foot.*

petō, -ere, -ivi [-iī], **-itum,** *attack, aim at, seek, ask.*

phalanx, -angis, F., *phalanx.*

pīlum, -ī, N., *javelin.*

Pisō, -ōnis, M., *Marcus Piso, a Roman consul, 61 B.C.*

plēbs, plēbis, F., *common people, plebeians.*

plēnus, -a, -um, *full.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, *sup. of multus.*

plūs, plūris, *comp. of multus.*

poena, -ae, F., *punishment, penalty.*

polliceor, 2, *promise.*

pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, *put, place, pitch (a camp).*

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge.*

populātiō, -ōnis, F., *ravaging.*

populor, 1, *devastate, ravage.*

populus, -ī, M., *people, nation.*

porta, -ae, F., *gate.*

portō, 1, *carry, bring.*

portōrium, -ī, N., *tax, tariff.*

poscō, -ere, poposci, *demand.*

possessiō, -ōnis, F., *possession.*

possum, posse, potui [potis, *able* + sum], *be able, can.*

post, prep. with acc., *behind, after.*

postea, adv. [post + ea], *afterwards.*

posterus, -a, -um, *following.*

postquam, conj., *after, as soon as.*

postridīē, adv., *on the day after.*

potēns, -entis, *powerful.*

potentia, -ae, F., *power, ability.*

potestās, -ātis, F., *power.*

potior, potiri, potitus sum, *get control of, obtain possession of, secure.*

prae, prep. with abl., *before; as prefix, before, over, very.*

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
[prae + cēdō], *go before, surpass, precede, excel.*

praecipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum
[prae + capio], *take in advance, order.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praeda, -ae, F., *booty, plunder.*

praefērō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [prae + ferō], *bear before, choose, prefer.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum [prae + faciō], *put before, put over, place in command.*

praemittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum
[prae + mittō], *send before, send in advance.*

praeeptō, 1 [prae + optō, *choose*], *choose rather, prefer.*

praesēns, -entis [praesum], *part. as adj., present.*

praesentia, -ae, F., *the present time.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesidium, -ī, N., *protection, guard, garrison.*

praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stitum [prae + stō, *stand*], *stand before, excel, present, furnish; impers., it is preferable.*

praesum, -esse, fui [prae + sum], *be before, be over, command.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *past, by, beyond, except; as prefix, by, past.*

praetereō, -īre, -ivi (-iī), **-itum**
[praeter + eō], *go by.*

praeterita, -ōrum, N., *the past*.
 praeterquam, adv., *except*.
 praetor, -ōris, M., *commander, judge*.
 prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsūm,
 lay hold of, grasp.
 pretium, -ī, N., *price*.
 prex, precis, F., *prayer*.
 pridīe, adv., *on the day before*.
 primum, adv., *in the first place, first*.
 primus, -a, -um, *first*.
 princeps, -ipis, adj., *chief*; as noun,
 chief, leader.
 principātus, -ūs, M., *leadership, chief*
 position.
 pristinus, -a, -um, *former, old*.
 prius, comp. adv., *sooner*.
 priusquam, conj., *before, sooner*
 than.
 privātim, adv., *privately, as private*
 citizens.
 privātus, -a, -um, *private, personal*.
 prō, prep. with abl., *before, for, in*
 behalf of, in proportion to; as
 prefix, *before, forth, out*.
 probō, I, *test, prove, approve*.
 Procillus, -ī, M., *Gaius Valerius*
 Procillus, a Gallic chief.
 prōditiō, -ōnis, F., *treason*.
 prōdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *transmit,*
 hand down.
 proelium, -iī, N., *battle*.
 profectiō, -ōnis, F., *setting out, de-*
 parture.
 proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum,
 set out, depart.
 prohibeō, 2, *keep from, prohibit,*
 prevent, hinder.
 prōiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [prō +
 iaciō], *throw forth, hurl, cast*
 down.
 prope, adv., and prep. with acc.,
 near.

prōpellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum
 [prō + pellō], *drive before, rout*.
 propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighbor-*
 ing; as subst. noun, *relative, kins-*
 man.
 prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum
 [prō + pōnō], *set forth, declare*.
 propter, prep. with acc., *on ac-*
 count of.
 propterea [propter + ea], adv., *for*
 this reason.
 prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum,
 look forward, look out for.
 prōvincia, -ae, F., *province*.
 proximē, adv. [prope], *next, nearest,*
 last.
 proximus, -a, -um, *nearest, next, last*.
 publicē, adv., *publicly, on the part of*
 the state.
 publicus, -a, -um, *public*.
 Publius, -ī (abbr. P.), M., a Roman
 name.
 puer, -ī, M., *boy, child*.
 pūgna, -ae, F., *fight, battle*.
 pūgnō, I, *fight*.
 pūrgō, I, *clear, excuse*.
 putō, I, *suppose, reckon, think*.
 Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um; with montēs,
 the Pyrenees.

Q

quā, adv., *by which way, where*.
 quadrāgintā, indecl. adj., *forty*.
 quadringenti, -ae, -a, *four hun-*
 dred.
 quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quesi-
 tum, *seek, ask*.
 quālis, -e, *of what sort*.
 quam, adv. and conj., *how, as,*
 than; with sup., *as possible*.
 quamquam, conj., *although*.

quantus, -a, -um, *how great*: tantus—quantus, *so (as) great—as*.
 quā rē, adv., *wherefore, for this reason*.
 quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth*.
 quattuor, indecl. adj., *four*.
 quattuordecim, indecl. adj., *fourteen*.
 -que, enclitic conj., *and*.
 queror, queri, questus sum, *complain*.
 qui, quae, quod, *who, which, that*.
 quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain, certain*.
 quidem, *indeed*: nē—quidem, *not even*.
 quin, conj., *that, but that*: quin etiam, *nay more*.
 quindecim, indecl. adj., *fifteen*.
 quingenti, -ae, -a, *five hundred*.
 quini, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., *five each, five*.
 quinquaginta, indecl. adj., *fifty*.
 quinque, indecl. adj., *five*.
 quintus, -a, -um, *fifth*.
 quis, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* indef. pron., *any one, anything*.
 quisquam, quidquam [quicquam], *any one, any thing*.
 quisque, quaeque, quidque [quodque], *each one, every one, each*.
 quō, conj. (= ut eō), *in order that*.
 quod, conj., *because*; quod si, *but if*.
 quoque, conj., *also*.
 quot, indec. adj., *how many*.

R

rapiditas, -atis, F. [rapidus], *swiftness, rapidity*.
 rapina, -ae, F., *plunder, rapine*.

ratiō, -ōnis, F., *reckoning, plan, reason*.
 ratis, -is, F., *raft*.
 Rauraci, -ōrum, M., *the Rauraci, neighbors of the Helvetii*.
 re- (red-), prefix, *back, again*.
 recēns, -entis, *fresh, recent, new*.
 recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [re + capiō], *take back, receive*.
 rēda, -ae, F., *wagon*.
 redeō, -ire, -ii, -itum [red + eō], *go back, return*.
 redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēptum [red + emō], *buy back, buy up*.
 redintegrō, i [red + integrō], *renew, restore*.
 reditiō, -ōnis, F. [redeō], *a going back, return*.
 reducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum [re + dūcō], *lead back, withdraw*.
 referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [re + ferō], *bring back, report*.
 rēgnum, -i, N. [rēx], *sovereignty, royal power*.
 regō, 3, *rule*.
 rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [re + iaciō], *throw back, drive back*.
 relinquō, -linguere, -liqui, -lictum [re + linquō], *leave behind, abandon*; pass. *be left, remain*.
 reliquus, -a, -um, *the rest of, remaining*.
 remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *remain*.
 reminiscor, -i, *call to mind, remember*.
 removeō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, [re + moveō], *move back, remove*.
 renūntiō, i [re + nūntiō], *bring back word, report*.
 repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum [re + pellō], *drive back, repulse*.
 repentinus, -a, -um, *sudden*.

reperiō, reperire, repperi, repertum
[re + pariō, *procure*], *find out, discover.*

reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehensum [re +prehendō, *seize*],
blame, censure.

repugnō, ī [re + pugnō], *fight back, resist, be in opposition.*

rēs, rei, F., *thing, affair, fact.*

rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum
[re + scindō], *cut off, break down, destroy.*

resciscō, -sciscere, -scivi [scii], -scitum, *learn.*

resistō, -sistere, -stiti [re + sistō, *stand*], *stand back, stop, resist, withstand.*

respondeō, -spondere, -spondi, -spōnsum, *answer, reply.*

respōnsum, -i, N., *reply.*

rēs publica, rei publicae, F., *state.*

restituō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum [re + statuō], *set up again, restore.*

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuei, -tentum
[re + teneō], *hold back, detain.*

revertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum
[re + vertō], *turn back, return:*
revertor, -i, dep., is generally
used in the present system.

revocō, ī [re + vocō], *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, M., *king.*

Rhēnus, -i, M., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, -i, M., *the Rhone.*

rīpa, -ae, F., *bank (of a river).*

rogō, ī, *ask.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*; as noun,
Rōmāni, -ōrum, M., *the Romans.*

rota, -ae, F., *wheel.*

rūrsus, adv., *again.*

rūs, rūris, N., *the country (opposed to city).*

S

saepe, adv., *often.*

salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety.*

Santonēs, -um [-i, -ōrum], M., *the Santones, a Gallic tribe.*

sarcinae, -arum, F., *soldiers' packs, baggage (carried by soldiers).*

satis, adv. and indecl. adj., *enough, sufficiently, sufficient.*

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum
[satis + faciō], *do enough, satisfy, make amends.*

scelus, -eris, N., *crime.*

sciō, scire, scivi, scitum, *know.*

scūtum, -i, N., *shield.*

sēcrētō, adv., *secretly, in private.*

secundus, -a, -um, *following, second, favorable.*

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdecim [sex], indecl. adj., *sixteen.*

sēditiosus, -a, -um, *seditionous.*

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M., *the Segusiavi, a Gallic tribe.*

sēmentis, -is, F., *sowing, planting.*

semper, adv., *always.*

senātus, ūs, M., *senate.*

senex, senis, *old*; as noun, *old man.*

sēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num., adj., *six each, six.*

sentīō, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsus, *feel, perceive, think.*

sēparatim, adv., *separately.*

septentriōnēs, -um (septentriō, -ōnis),
M., *seven stars, the Great Bear, the north.*

septimus, -a, -um, *seventh.*

sepultūra, -ae, F., *burial.*

Sēquana, -ae, F. or M., *the Seine.*

Sēquani, -ōrum, M., *the Sequani, Sequanians, a Gallic tribe.*

sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *follow*.

servitūs, -ūtis, F., *slavery*.

servus, -i, M., *slave*.

seu, *see sive*.

sex, indecl. adj., *six*.

sexāgintā, indecl. adj., *sixty*.

si, conj., *if*.

sic, adv., *so, thus*.

signifer, -feri, M., *standard-bearer*.

signum, -i, N., *signal, standard*.

silva, -ae, F., *forest*.

similis, -e, *like, similar*.

simul, adv., *at the same time, at once*.

sīn, conj., *but if*.

sine, prep. with abl., *without*.

singuli, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,
one at a time, one by one, single.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (opposed
to dexter, right).

sive [seu], conj., *or if*; sive—sive,
whether—or, either—or.

socer, soceri, M., *father-in-law*.

socius, -i, M., *ally*.

sōl, sōlis, M., *the sun*.

solum, adv., *only*.

solum, -i, N., *soil, ground*.

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*.

soror, -ōris, F., *sister*.

spatium, -i, N., *space, period*.

spectō, i, *look, face*.

spērō, i [spēs], *hope, look for*.

spēs, -ei, F., *hope*.

spontis (gen; sponte, abl.), *of one's
own accord, willingly*.

statuō, -nere, -ui, -ūtum, *set up, es-
tablish, determine, decide*.

stipendiārius, -a, -um, *tributary*.

studeō, -ēre, -ui, *be eager for, de-
sire*.

studium, -i, N., *eagerness, attach-
ment*.

sub, prep. with acc. or abl., *under,
near, beneath*; as prefix, *under*.

subducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum
[sub + ducō], *draw up, with-
draw*.

subeō, -īre, -ii, -itum [sub + eō], *go
under, go near, undergo*.

subiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum [sub +
iaciō], *throw under, discharge,
subject, expose to*.

sublevō, i [sub + levō], *lift up, aid*.

submoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum
[sub + moveō], *remove*.

subsistō, -sistere, -stiti [sub + sistō],
stand still, halt, withstand, resist.

subsum, -esse, -ui [sub + sum], *be
under, be near*.

subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum
[sub + vehō], *bring up, convey*.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum
[sub + cēdō], *go under, go near,
approach, succeed, advance*.

sui, sibi, sē [sēsē], *himself, her-
self, etc.*

Sulla, -ae, M., a Roman dictator.

sum, esse, fui, *be*.

summa, -ae, F., (*highest point*), *sum,
total*.

summus, -a, -um [superus], *highest*.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum,
take, claim.

sūmptus, -ūs, M., *expense*.

super, adv. and prep. with acc.,
above, over; as prefix, *over*.

superō, i, *surpass, conquer*.

supersum, -esse, -ui [super + sum],
be over, survive, remain.

superus, -a, -um (comp. superior,
sup. suprēmus, summus), *upper,
higher*.

suppetō, -petere, -petivi, -petitum,
be on hand, be in store.

suppliciter, adv., *humbly*.
 supplicium, -i, N., *punishment*.
 supportō [sub + portō], *bring up, convey, supply*.
 suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum [sub + capiō], *undertake, undergo*.
 suspiciō, -ōnis, F., *suspicion*.
 sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum [sub + teneō], *hold up, hold out, sustain, withstand*.
 suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their*.

T

T., see Titus.
 tabula, -ae, F., *board, tablet, record*.
 taceō, 2, *be silent, keep silent*.
 tam, adv., *so*.
 tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet*.
 tandem, adv., *at length*.
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great*.
 telum, -i, N., *weapon, javelin, spear*.
 temperantia, -ae, F., *self-control, moderation*.
 temperō, 1, *control, refrain*.
 tempestās, -ātis, F., *season, weather, storm*.
 temptō (tentō), 1, *try, attempt*.
 tempus, -oris, N., *time*.
 teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *hold*.
 terra, -ae, F., *earth, land, country*.
 terreō, 2, *frighten*.
 tertius, -a, -um, *third*.
 testis, -is, M. F., *witness*.
 Tigurinus, -a, -um, *of the Tigurini*:
 Tigurini, -orum, M., *the Tigurini, a canton of the Helvetii*.
 timeō, -ēre, -ui, *fear*.
 timor, -ōris, M., *fear*.
 Titus, -i (abbr. T.), M., *a Roman name*.
 tolerō, 1, *endure, support*.

tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātum, *lift up, take away, destroy*.
 Tolōsātēs, ium, M., *the Tolosates, a tribe in southern Gaul*.
 tōtus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), *the whole of, all, entire*.
 tradō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *give over, hand down, surrender*.
 tradūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum [trāns + dūcō], *lead across*.
 trāgula, -ae, F., *a Gallic dart*.
 trāns, prep. with acc., *across; as prefix, across, through*.
 trānseō, -ire, -ii, -itum [trāns + eō], *go across, cross*.
 trānsfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum [trāns + figō], *pierce through*.
 trecenti, -ae, -a, *three hundred*.
 trēs, tria, *three*.
 tribuō, -uere, -ui, -ūtum, *assign, attribute*.
 triduum, -i, N., *three days*.
 trigintā, indecl. adj., *thirty*.
 triplex, -icis, *threefold, triple*.
 tū, *thou, you*.
 tuba, -ae, F., *trumpet*.
 Tulingi, -ōrum, M., *the Tulingi, a German tribe*.
 tum, adv., *then, at that time*.
 turpitūdō, -inis, F. [turpis], *disgrace*.
 turris, -is, F., *tower*.
 tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your*.

U

ubi, *when, where*.
 ulciscor, ulcisci, ultus sum, *avenge, punish*.
 ullus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -i), *any*.
 ulterior, -ius, comp. adj., *farther*.

ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond*.
 ūnā, adv., *together*.
 unde, adv., *from which place, whence*.
 undique [unde], adv., *from all parts, on all sides*.
 ūnus, -a, -um (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), *one*.
 urbs, urbis, F., *city*.
 ut [utī], conj. with subj., *that, in order that, to*; with indicative, *as, when*.
 uter, -tra, -trum (gen. -ius, dat. -ī), *which of two, which*.
 utinam, adv., *O that! would that!*
 ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use*.
 uxor, -ōris, F., *wife*.

V

vacō, I, *be vacant, be unoccupied*.
 vadum, -ī, N., *ford, shoal*.
 vagor, I, *wander*.
 valeō, 2, *be strong, be powerful, have influence*.
 Valerius, *see Procillus*.
 vāllum, -ī, N., *palisade, rampart*.
 vāstō, I, *lay waste, devastate*.
 vectigal, -ālis, N., *tax, revenue*.
 vel, or; vel—vel, *either—or*.
 vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift*.
 enīd, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come*.
 stārbigenus, -ī, M., *a canton of the Helvetii*.
 stīrbum, -ī, N., *word*.
 vereor, 2, *fear, dread*.
 vergō, vergere, *incline, slope, lie*.
 vergobretus, -ī, M., *the title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui*.

Verudoctius, -ī, M., *an Helvetian chief*.
 vērus, -a, -um, *true*.
 vesper, -erī, M., *evening*.
 vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours*.
 veterānus, -a, -um, *old, veteran*; as noun, *veteran soldier, veteran*.
 vetus, -eris, *old, former*.
 vexō, I, *harass*.
 via, -ae, F., *way, road*.
 victōria, -ae, F., *victory*.
 vīcus, -ī, M., *village*.
 videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*; pass., *be seen, seem*.
 vigilia, -ae, F., *watch of the night, watch*.
 vīgintī, indecl. adj., *twenty*.
 vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer*.
 vinculum, -ī, N., *bond*.
 vir, -ī, M., *man*.
 virtūs, -ūtis, F., *virtue, valor*.
 vis, vīs, F., *force, violence*; pl. vīrēs, *strength*.
 vīta, -ae, F., *life*.
 vītō, I, *shun, avoid*.
 vix, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely*.
 vocō, I, *call, summon*.
 Vocontī, -ōrum, M., *the Vocontii, a Gallic tribe*.
 volgus, -ī, N., *the multitude, public, common people*.
 volnerō, I, *wound, injure*.
 volnus, -neris, N., *a wound*.
 volō, velle, voluī, *wish, be willing*.
 voluntās, -ātis, F., *willingness, wish, consent, good-will*.
 vōs [tū], *you*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able, *be, possum.*
 about, *circum*; with numerals, *ad.*
 accomplish, *cōficiō.*
 accuse, *accūsō.*
 across, *trāns.*
 active, *ācer.*
 advise, *moneō.*
 after, (prep.) *post*; (conj.) *postquam.*
 aid, *auxilium.*
 all, *omnis.*
 allow, *concēdō, patior.*
 ally, *socius.*
 almost, *ferē, paene.*
 although, *cum, etsi, quamquam.*
 always, *semper.*
 ambassador, *lēgātus.*
 amends, make, *satisfaciō.*
 among, *inter, apud.*
 ancestors, *maiores.*
 and, *et, -que, ac, atque.*
 animal, *animal, -ālis, N.*
 announce, *nūntiō, ēnūntiō, renūntiō.*
 another, *alius.*
 anyone, *quis, quisquam.*
 appoint, *cōstituiō.*
 approach, *accēdō.*
 April, *Aprilis.*
 Aquitani, Aquitanians, *Aquitāni.*
 are, see *be.*
 arms, *arma.*
 army, *exercitus.*

arouse, *commoveō, permoveō.*
 arrival, *adventus.*
 arrive, *pervenio.*
 as—as possible, *quam* with *sup.*
 with or without *possum.*
 ascent, *ascēsus.*
 ask, *rogō.*
 assemble, *conveniō.*
 at, *ad.*
 attack, (noun) *impetus*; (verb) *op-
 pugnō, adior, adgredior.*
 attempt, (noun) *cōnātus*; (verb)
 cōnor.
 auxiliary forces, *auxilia.*
 avenge, *ulciscor.*
 away, be, *absum.*

B

baggage, *impedimenta.*
 bank (of a river), *ripa.*
 battle, *proelium.*
 be (am), *sum.*
 beast of burden, *iumentum.*
 because, *quod.*
 before, (prep.) *ante, prō*; (conj.)
 antequam, priusquam.
 began, *coepi.*
 beginning, *initium.*
 Belgians, *Belgae.*
 better, *melior.*
 between, *inter.*
 blot out, *dēlēō.*
 boat, *nāvis.*

boldly, *audācter*.
 booty, *praeda*.
 both—and, *et—et*.
 bound (geographically), *contineō*.
 boundaries, *finēs*.
 boy, *puer*.
 brave, *fortis*.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 bravery, *fortitūdō*.
 breadth, *lātitudō*.
 break down, *rescindō*.
 break through, *perrumpō*.
 bridge, *pōns*.
 bring, *portō, ferō*.
 bring together, *cōgō, conducō, conferō*.
 bring upon, *inferō*.
 broad, *lātus*.
 brother, *frāter*.
 building, *aedificium*.
 burn, *combūrō, exūrō, incendō*; burn to death, *cremo Ignē*.
 but, *sed, autem*.
 buy, buy up, *coēmō*.
 by, sign of abl.; *ā, ab*, with abl.

C

call (by name), *appellō*; (summon), *vocō*; (back) *revocō*.
 call together, *convocō*.
 camp, *castra*.
 can, *possum*.
 canoe, *linter*.
 canton, *pāgus*.
 capture, *expūgnō, capiō*.
 carry, *portō*.
 carry off, *abducō*.
 carry on (war), *gerō*.
 carry out (accomplish), *conficiō*.
 cart, *carrus*.
 cause, (noun) *causa*; (verb) *cūrō*.

cavalry, (noun) *equitēs, equitātus*; (adj.) *equester*.
 Celts, *Celtae*.
 certain, a, *quīdam*.
 chief, *princeps*.
 children, *liberī, puerī*.
 choose, *dēligō*.
 citizens, *civitās*.
 city, *urbs*.
 civilization, *cultus*.
 climb, *ascendō*.
 collect, *cōgō, conducō*.
 come, *veniō*.
 come together, *conveniō*.
 command, *imperō, iubeō*.
 command, be in, *praesum*.
 command, put in, *praefficiō*.
 commander-in-chief, *imperātor*.
 common people, *plēbs*.
 compel, *cōgō*.
 concerning, *dē*.
 congratulate, *grātulor*.
 conquer, *vincō*.
 consider (regard), *habeō*.
 conspiracy, *coniūratiō*.
 conspire, *coniūrō*.
 construct, *perducō*.
 consul, *cōsul*.
 contend, *contendō*.
 could, see can.
 council, *concilium*.
 country, *terra, ager, finēs*; (not city), *rūs*.
 courage, *animus, virtūs*.
 course, *iter*.
 cross, *trāseō*.
 cultivate, *colō*.

D

daily, *cotidiānus*.
 danger, *periculum*.

daughter, *filia*.
 day, *diēs*.
 debtor, *obacratūs*.
 decide, *cōstitutō, iūdicō*.
 deep, *altus*.
 defend, *dēfendō*.
 demand, *imperō, poscō*.
 depart, *discēdō, proficiscor*.
 departure, *profectiō*.
 deserve, *mercor*.
 desire, (noun) *cupiditās*; (verb) *cupiō*.
 desirous, *cupidus*.
 desist, *dēsistō*.
 destroy, *rescindō, cōsumō*.
 determine, *cōstitutō*.
 devastate, *vastō, populor*.
 die, *morior*.
 difficult, *difficilis*.
 direction, *pars*.
 disaster, *calamitās*.
 discover, *reperiō*.
 disgrace, *turpitūdō*.
 dismiss, *dimittō*.
 distant, be, *absum*.
 district, *pāgus*.
 divide, *dividō*.
 do, *agō, faciō*.
 doubt, there is, *dubium est*.
 draw up (troops), *instruō*.

E

each other, to, *inter sē*.
 eager, *cupidus*; be eager for, *studet*.
 easily, *facile*.
 east, *oriēns sōl*.
 easy, *facilis*.
 eight, *octō*.
 eighth, *octāvus*.
 eighty, *octōgintā*.
 either—or, aut—aut, *vel—vel*.

embassy, *lēgatiō*.
 enemy, *hostēs*.
 enough, *satis*.
 enroll, *cōscribō*.
 escape, *vītō, perfugiō*.
 establish, *cōfirmō*.
 every, *omnis, quisque*.
 excel, *præcēdō, præstō*.
 expect, *expectō*.
 extend, *pateō, pertineō*.

F

fact, *rēs*.
 famous, *nōbilis*.
 farthest, *extrēmus*.
 father, *pater*.
 favor, *indulgēō*.
 fear, (noun) *timor*; (verb) *timeō, vereor*.
 fertile, *ferāx*.
 few, *pauci*; very few, *perpauci*.
 field, *ager*.
 fight, *pugnō, contendō*.
 find out, *cōgnōscō, reperiō*.
 fire, *ignis*.
 first, *primus*.
 five, *quīnque*.
 flight, *fuga*.
 flow, *fluō*; flow into, *influō*.
 follow, *sequor*.
 foot, *pēs*.
 foot soldier, *pedes*.
 for, prep., sign of dat. case; *pro* with abl.
 force, *vis*.
 forces, *cōpiae*.
 ford, *fording, vadum*.
 forest, *silva*.
 forget, *obliviscor*.
 fort, *castellum*.
 fortification, *mūnitō, opus*.
 fortify, *mūniō*.

fortify strongly, *commūniō*.
 forty, *quadrāgintā*.
 four, *quattuor*.
 fourth, *quārtus*.
 free, *liber*.
 friend, *amicus*.
 friendly, *amicus*.
 friendship, *amicitia*.
 from, sign of abl.; *ab, dē, ex*, with
 abl.

G

Garonne, *Garumna*.
 Gaul, *Gallia*; a Gaul, *Gallus*.
 general, *imperator*.
 Geneva, *Genāva*.
 Geneva, lake, *Lemannus*.
 German, *Germānus*.
 get control of, *potior*.
 give, *dō*.
 go, *eō*.
 go across, *trānsēō*.
 go back and forth, *commēō*.
 go forth, *exēō*.
 good, *bonus*.
 grain, *frūmentum*.
 great, *māgnus*; so great, *tantus*.
 grind, *molō*.
 guard, *praesidium*.

H

Haeduan, *Haeduus*.
 Haedui, *Haedui*.
 hand, *manus*.
 harm, *maleficium*.
 happen, *accidō, fiō*.
 hasten, *contendō, mātūrō*.
 have, *habēō*.
 he, *is*, or ending of the verb.
 hear, *audiō*.
 heavy, *gravis*.

height, *altitūdō*.
 help, *auxilium*.
 Helvetian, *Helvētius*.
 her, *ēius*; her own, *suus*.
 high, *altus*.
 higher, *superior*.
 hill, *collis*.
 himself, *ipse, suī*.
 his, *ēius*; his own, *suus*.
 hold, *habēō, teneō*.
 home, *domus*.
 hope, (noun) *spēs*; (verb) *spērō*.
 horn, *cornū*.
 horse, *equus*.
 horseman, *eques*.
 hostage, *obses*.
 hour, *hōra*.
 house, *domus*.
 household, *familia*.
 hundred, *centum*.

I

I, *ego*, or ending of the verb.
 Ides, *Idūs*.
 if, *sī*.
 import, *importō*.
 in, sign of abl.; *in* with abl.
 in order that, *ut, quō*; — not, *nē*.
 induce, *adducō, inducō*.
 inflict, *ferō, inferō*.
 influence, (noun) *auctoritās*; (verb)
 influence, *adducō, inducō*.
 inform, *certiorem faciō*.
 informed, be, *certior fiō*.
 inhabit, *incolō*.
 injury (a wrong), *iniūria*.
 intend, *in animō est*, with dat.
 into, *in* with acc.
 is, see *be*.
 it, demons. pron. or ending of the
 verb.

J

javelin, *pīlum*.
join, *iungō*; join (battle), *committō*.
journey, *iter*.

K

keep away (keep off), *prohibeō*.
kill, *concidō*, *interficiō*, *occidō*.
kindness, *beneficium*.
king, *rēx*.
know, *intellegō*, *sciō*.

L

lake, *lacus*.
land, *terra*.
language, *lingua*.
large, *māgnus*.
last, *extrēmus*.
law, *lēx*.
lay waste, *vāstō*, *dēpopulor*, *populor*.
lead, *dūcō*.
lead across, *trānsdūcō*.
lead away, *abdūcō*.
lead out, *ēdūcō*.
leader, *dux*.
learn, *cōgnōscō*, *discō*.
legion, *legiō*.
length, *longitūdō*.
less, *minus*.
letter, *litterae* (pl.).
levy upon, *imperō*.
lieutenant, *lēgātus*.
like, *similis*.
line (of battle), *aciēs*.
live, *incolō*.
long, *longus* (in space); *diuturnus* (in time).
look, *spectō*.
lower, *inferior*.

M

magistrate, *magistrātus*.
make, *faciō*; be made *fiō*.
man, *vir*, *homō*.
many, *multī*.
march, (noun) *iter*; (verb) *iter faciō*.
Marne, *Mātrona*.
marriage, *mātrimōnium*.
memory, *memoria*.
merchant, *mercātor*.
merit, *meritum*.
message, *nūntius*.
messenger, *nūntius*.
mile, *mille passuum*.
mind, *animus*.
mischief, *maleficium*.
month, *mēnsis*.
most, *māximē*, *plūrimum*, or sup. ending.
move, *moveō*.
mountain, *mōns*.
much, (adj.) *multus*; (adv.) *multō*.

N

name (noun), *nōmen*; (verb) *appellō*.
narrow, *angustus*.
narrow-pass, *angustiae*.
nation, *nātiō*, *genus*.
nature, *nātūra*.
near, (prep.) *ad*; (adv.) *prope*.
nearest, very near, *proximus*.
necessary, it is, *oportet*.
neighbors, *finitimī*.
neither, (pron.) *neuter*; (conj.) *neque*.
next, *proximus*.
new, *novus*.
night, *nox*.
nine, *novem*.
ninth, *nōnus*.

note me

no, (adj.) *nūllus*.
 no one, *nēmō, nūllus*.
 nobles, the, *nōbilitās*.
 none, *nūllus*.
 north, *septentrionēs*.
 not, *nōn, nē*.
 not only—but also, *nōn solum—*
sed etiam.
 not yet, *nōndum*.
 nothing, *nihil*.
 number, *numerus*.

O

ocean, *Ōceanus*.
 of, sign of gen.; *dē, ex*, with abl.
 often, *saepe*.
 old, *vetus*.
 on, *in* with abl.
 on account of, *ob, propter*.
 on all sides, *undique*.
 on this side of, *citrā*.
 one, *ūnus*.
 opportunity, *facultās*.
 or, *aut, vel*.
 order, *iubeō, imperō*.
 order, in — that, *ut, quō*.
 other, of more than two, *alius*; the
 other, of two, *alter*.
 ought, *dēbeō, oportet*.
 our, *noster*.
 out of, *ex*.
 over, *trāns*.

P

pace, *passus*.
 pack animal, *iumentum*.
 part, *pars*.
 peace, *pāx*.
 people, *populus*; common people,
plēbs.
 peril, *periculum*.

persuade, *persuādeō*.
 pitch (a camp), *pōnō*.
 pity, *miseret* (impers. verb).
 place, *locus*; to the same place,
eōdem.
 place over, *praeficiō*.
 plan, *cōsilium*.
 pledge, *fidēs*.
 popular with, *acceptus*.
 possession, get — of, *potior*.
 possible, as—as, *quam* + a superla-
 tive.

powerful, *potēns*.
 praise, *laudō*.
 prepare, *comparō*.
 prevent, *prohibeō*.
 private, *privātus*.
 promise, *polliceor*.
 protect, *dēfendō*.
 province, *prōvincia*.
 public, *pūblicus*.
 punish, *ulciscor*.
 punishment, *poena*.
 purpose, for the, *causā*.
 Pyrenees, *Pyrēnaei montēs*.

Q

quickly, *celeriter*.

R

raft, *ratis*.
 ravage, *vāstō*.
 reach (= arrive at), *pervenio*.
 ready, *parātus*.
 rear guard, *novissimum āgmen*.
 recall, *revocō*.
 receive, *recipio*.
 recent, *recēns*.
 recently, *nūper*.
 redoubt, *castellum*.
 refinement, *hūmānitās*.
 remain, *remaneō, relinquer*.

remember, *memoriā teneō, reminiscor.*

reply, *respondeō.*

report, *nūntiō, ēnūntiō, renūntiō.*

resist, *resistō.*

rest, the — of, *reliquus.*

restrain, *contineō, coërceō.*

retainers, *familia.*

retinue, *familia.*

retreat, *recipiō* with *sē*, etc.

return, (noun) *reditiō*; (verb) *revertō, revertor.*

revolution, *novae rēs.*

Rhine, *Rhēnus.*

Rhone, *Rhodanus.*

right, *iūs.*

right hand, *dextra (manus).*

river, *flūmen.*

road, *via, iter.*

roam about, *vagor.*

Roman, *Rōmānus.*

royal power, *rēgnum.*

S

safety, *salūs.*

sail, *nāvigō.*

sailor, *nauta.*

sake, for the, *causā.*

same, *idem.*

Saône, *Arar.*

say, *dicō*; say—not, *negō.*

scarcity, *inopia.*

scout, *explōrātor.*

second, *alter, secundus.*

see, *videō.*

seek, *petō.*

Seine, *Sēquana.*

seize, *occupō.*

select, *dēligō.*

senate, *senātus.*

send, *mittō.*

separate, *dividō.*

Sequani, *Sēquani.*

Sequanian, *Sēquanus.*

set fire to, *incendō.*

set out, *proficiscor.*

severely, *graviter.*

ship, *nāvis.*

short, *brevis.*

show, *dēmōnstrō, ostendō.*

side, *pars*; on this — of, *citrā.*

sides, from all, *undique.*

signal, *signum.*

since, *cum.*

skilful, skilled, *peritus.*

slavery, *servitūs.*

small, *parvus.*

so, *ita, tam*; so that, *ut.*

soldier, *miles.*

some, *nōnnūllus, aliquis.*

sometimes, *interdum.*

son, *filius.*

Spain, *Hispania.*

speak, *loquor.*

spear, *tēlum.*

spend-the-winter, *hiemō.*

spirit, *animus.*

standard, *signum.*

standard-bearer, *signifer.*

station, *dispōnō.*

stone, *lapis, -idis, M.*

storm, (noun) *tempestās*; (verb) *op-pugnō* (take by storm).

strong, *fortis.*

subdue, *pācō.*

suitable, *idōneus.*

surpass, *praecēdō.*

suspicion, *suspiciō.*

swift, *vēlōx.*

sword, *gladius.*

T

take, *capiō, expugnō.*

take away, *tollō.*

tarry, *moror*.
 teach, *doceō*.
 ten, *decem*.
 terrify, *terreō*.
 territory, *ager, finēs*.
 than, *quam*. [*quod, quā*.
 that, (pron.) *is, ille*; (conj. *ut*,
 their, *eōrum, ipsōrum*, (own) *suus*.
 them, *eos, illōs*.
 themselves, *suī, ipsī*.
 there (in that place), *ibi*; (expletive)
 omit.
 these, see *this*.
 they, *eī, illi*, or ending of verb.
 thing, *rēs*.
 think, *arbitror, existimō, putō*.
 third, *tertius*.
 this, *hic, is*.
 those, see *that*.
 thousand, *mille*.
 three, *trēs*.
 through, *per*.
 throw, *iaciō*.
 time, *tempus*.
 to, sign of dative; sign of inf.; *ad*,
 with acc.; *ut*, with subj.
 too, express by ending of a compar-
 ative.
 tower, *turris*.
 town, *oppidum*.
 trader, *mercātor*.
 transport, *transportō*.
 treason, *proditio*.
 tribe, *genus, civitās*.
 trickery, *insidiae*.
 troops, *cōpiae*.
 trumpet, *tuba*.
 try, *cōnor*.
 turn (aside), *āvertō*.
 twenty, *vīgintī*.
 two, *duo*.
 two hundred, *ducentī*.

U

under, *sub*.
 understand, *intelligō*.
 undertake, *suscipio*.
 undertaking, *cōnātum*.
 unfriendly, *inimicus*.
 until, *dum*.
 unwilling, *invitus*; be unwilling,
nōlō.
 urge, *hortor*.
 us, *nōs*.
 use, *utor*.

V

valor, *virtūs*.
 very, superlative ending; *ipse*.
 very few, *perpauci*.
 victory, *victōria*.
 village, *vicus*.

W

wage, *gerō*.
 wagon, *carrus*.
 wait, *expectō*.
 wall, *mūrus*.
 war, *bellum*.
 warn, *monēō*.
 was, see *be*.
 waste, *lay*, see *lay*.
 watch, *vigilia*.
 way, *via, iter*.
 we, *nōs*, or ending of verb.
 were, see *be*.
 what? *quis?*
 when, *cum, ubi*.
 where, *ubi*.
 whether, *-ne*.
 whether—or, *sive—sive*.
 which, *qui*; which? *quis?*; on two?
uter?

while, *dum*.

who, *quī*; who? *quis*?

whole, *omnis*, *tōtus*.

why? *cūr*.

wide, *lātus*.

widely, *lātē*.

willing, be, *volō*.

winter, *hiems*; spend the winter,
hiemō.

winter-quarters, *hīberna*.

wish, *volō*.

with, sign of abl.; *cum*, with abl.

withstand, *resistō*.

within, sign of abl. (time).

without, *sine*.

work, *opus*.

wrong (injustice), *iniūria*.

Y

year, *annus*.

yet, *tamen*, *autem*.

yoke, *iugum*.

you, *tū*, *vōs*, or ending of verb.

your, *tuus*, *vester*.



INDEX

The numbers refer to sections, unless otherwise indicated.

A

Ablative, absolute, 276-279; of accompaniment, 439; of agent, 105; of cause, 392; after a comparative, 303; of degree of difference, 312; of description, 404; of manner, 251; of means, 74; of place from or in which, 49, note, 446; review of, 536; of separation, 448; of specification, 144; of time, 159; with *utor*, etc., 360.

Abstract nouns, 245.

Accent, 7.

Accompaniment, expressed by ablative, 439.

Accusative, of direct object, 40; of place to which, 49, note, 446; in the predicate, 532; with prepositions, 48, 49; review of, 535; as secondary object, 534; of space and time, 387; subject of infinitive, 233.

Adjectives, comparison of, 291-309; declension of comparative, 295; of first and second declensions, 82, 92, 177 (irregular); of third declension, 210.

Adverbs, comparison of, 323; formation of, 322.

Agency, expressed by ablative, 479; by dative, 104.

Agreement, of adjective, 85; of appositive, 135; of participle, 285; of predicate noun, 95; of relative pronoun, 184; of verbs, 32.

Alphabet, 2.

Answers, 500.

Apposition, 133.

Attributive adjective, 86.

B

Base, of nouns, 22.

C

Cæsar, Chap. I (begun), 220; historical sketch, 219.

Cases, defined, 10.

Cause, ablative of, 393; subjunctive of, 465.

certior, with *faciō*, *fiō*, 390.

Characteristic clause, 459.

Characteristic vowel, of conjugation, 19; of declension, 345.

Clauses, of cause, 465; of characteristic or description, 459; classified, 186; of concession, 569; of purpose, 199; of result, 399; of time, 472.

Comparative adjective, declension of, 295; meaning of, 296.

Comparison, of adjectives, 291-309; of adverbs, 323; how expressed, 303; irregular, 300, 307-309.

Complementary infinitive, 230.

Compound tenses, 283.

Compounds of *sum*, 374.

Concessive clauses, 569.

Conditional sentences, 488.

Conjugation, defined, 14.

Conjunctions, classified, page 282.

Contraction, in verbs, 265, 366, 419.

Cum (conj.), causal, 465; concessive, 569; temporal, 370.

Cum (prep.), with ablative of accompaniment, 439; of manner, 251.

D

Dative, with adjectives, 314; of agent, 479; with compound verbs, 379; of indirect object, 63; of possessor, 115; of purpose, 523; review of, 526; with verbs of special meaning, 471.

Declension, of comparative adjective, 295; defined, 9.

Degree of difference, 312.

Demonstrative pronouns, 190, 255.

Deponent verbs, 355.

Description, clauses of, 459; genitive and ablative of, 463.

E

Endings, table of indicative, 287; of infinitive, 420; of participles, 347; of subjunctive, 368.

F

faciō, with *certior*, 391.

Fear, subjunctive after, 206, c.

Fifth declension, 339.

fiō, with *certior*, 391; passive of *faciō*, 390.

First declension, 23, 29.

Fourth declension, 331.

Future indicative, 147, 163.

Future infinitive, active, 348; passive, 412.

Future participle, active, 346; passive, 241.

Future perfect indicative, active, 262; passive, 284.

G

Gender, 11; rules for, 12; in third declension, 162.

Genitive, with adjectives, 213; of description, 464; general rule, 47; objective, 515; with *potior*, 360; in the predicate, 518; review of, 517; of the whole, 385.

Genitive of nouns in *-ium*, *-ius*, 56.

Gerund, 239, 240.

Gerundive, 241-243.

H

Historical, infinitive, 232; notes, 219, 320; present, 402.

I

Idioms, 344.

Imperative mood, 540.

Imperfect, indicative, 120, 122, 130; subjunctive, 222.

Impersonal verbs, 428.

Indefinite pronouns, 509.

Indicative, in causal clauses, 465; in concessive clauses, 569; in conditions, 488; in relative clauses, 556; review of, 556; in temporal clauses, 472.

Indirect, discourse, 547-550; object, 61.

Infinitive, future, 348; perfect, 419; present, 228; subject of, 233; uses of, 230; with verbs meaning *say*, etc., 233.

Intensive pronoun, 257.

Interrogative pronoun, 497.

Irregular, adjectives, 177; verbs, 435.

L

Locative case, 10, 445.

M

Manner, ablative of, 251.

Means, ablative of, 74.

mille, uses of, 382.

Months of the Roman calendar, 469.

Moods, 15.

N

Negative commands, 543.

Nominative, in the predicate, 94, 105; review of, 139; as subject, 26.

Noun clauses, 430.

Number, 11.

Numerals, 456; declension of, 457.

O

Order of words, 50.

P

Participles, future active, 346; future passive (gerundive) 241; perfect, 274; present, 236-238.

Parts of speech, 8.

Perfect, indicative, active, 174-176; infinitive, 419; participle, 274; passive, 284; subjunctive, 366, 367; system, 425.

Periphrastic conjugations, 477-481.

Personal endings, active, 35, 120, 173 (perfect); passive, 99.

Personal pronouns, 507.

Persuade, subjunctive after, 206.

Place, to which, from which, in which, 446.

Pluperfect, indicative, active, 262; passive, 284; subjunctive, 366, 367.

plūrimum possum, 376.

Possession, expressed by dative, 115; by genitive, 46.

Possessive pronouns, 87.

potior, with genitive or ablative, 360.

Predicate, accusative, 532; adjective, 86; noun, 94, 105.

Prepositions, 49, page 281.

Present, indicative, active, 37, 44, 67, 69; infinitive, 228; participle, 236-238; passive, 100; subjunctive, 195, 204; system, 248.

Principal parts, active, 17; passive, 286.

Prohibitions, 543.

Pronouns, classified, 511.

Pronunciation, 3.

Purpose, expressed by dative, 523; by verbs, 199, 414.

Q

quam, with superlative, 304.

Quantity, of vowels, 5; of syllables, 6.

Questions, how expressed, 499; indirect, 501.

quā, with subjunctive, 371, note.

R

Reflexive pronoun, 350.

Relative pronoun, 182.

Result, clauses of, 399.

Review lessons, 77, 126, 169, 216, 269, 317, 363, 408, 452, 493.

Review of, ablative, 536; accusative, 535; dative, 526; genitive, 517; nominative, 139.

Review of forms, of indicative, 287; infinitive, 420; participles, 347; subjunctive, 368.

Review of uses, of indicative, 555, 556; subjunctive, 570.

Roman months, 469, note.

S

Second declension, 55, 91.

Secondary object, 534.

Semi-deponent verbs, 357.

Sentences, classified, 185.

Separation, ablative of, 448.

Sequence of tenses, 224, 405.

Space, extent of, 387.

Stems, of nouns and adjectives, 345; of verbs, 18.

Subjunctive, in causal clauses, 465; in concessive clauses, 569; in conditions, 488; in descriptive clauses, 459; general uses of, 197; in noun-clauses, 206; in principal clauses, 561-563; in purpose clauses, 199; in result clauses, 400; review of, 570; in temporal clauses, 370, 472; after verbs meaning *fear*, *persuade*, etc., 206, a, c.

sum, in compound verbs, 374.

Superlative, meaning of, 296; with **quam**, 304.

Supine, forms and uses, 411-413; stem, 273; system, 426.

Syllables, 4.
 Synopsis of verbs, 264.
 Systems, perfect, 425 ; present,
 248 ; supine, 426.

T

Temporal clauses, 472.
 Tenses, 11 ; of infinitive, 421 ;
 of participles, 236, 347 ; pri-
 mary, secondary, 403 ; se-
 quence, 224, 405.
 Time, expressed by ablative,
 159 ; by ablative absolute,
 276 ; by accusative, 387 ; by
 indicative and subjunctive
 clauses, 472.

Third conjugation in -iō, 249.

Third declension, 110, 119, 141,
 156, 162.

U

ūtor with ablative, 360.

V

Verbal adjectives and nouns, 16.

Vocative case, 10, 57.

Voices, 15.



